

MISSION STATEMENT

Our mission is to be an outstanding teaching and research university, educating for life and addressing the challenges facing our society.

Educating for life means that our educational process must provide:

- * a foundation of skills, knowledge and versatility that will last a lifetime, despite a changing environment;
- * research-based teaching and learning;
- * critical inquiry in the form of the search for new knowledge and better understanding; and
- * an active developmental role in our cultural, economic, political, scientific and social environment.

Addressing the challenges facing our society means that we must come to terms with our past, be cognisant of the present, and plan for the future. In this, it is central to our mission that we:

- * recognise our location in Africa and our historical context;
- * claim our place in the international community of scholars;
- * strive to transcend the legacy of apartheid in South Africa and to overcome all forms of gender and other oppressive discrimination;
- * be flexible on access, active in redress, and rigorous on success;
- * promote equal opportunity and the full development of human potential;
- * strive for inter-disciplinary and inter-institutional collaboration and synergy; and
- * value and promote the contribution that all our members make to realising our mission.

To equip people with lifelong skills we must and will:

- * promote the love of learning, the skill of solving problems, and the spirit of critical inquiry and research; and
- * take excellence as the benchmark for all we do.

We are committed to academic freedom, critical scholarship, rational and creative thought, and free inquiry. It is part of our mission to ensure that these ideals live; this necessarily requires a dynamic process of finding the balance in a range of choices: choices between freedom and responsibility, rights and obligations, autonomy and accountability, transparency and efficiency, and permanence and transience; and of doing this through consultation and debate.

Teaching and Learning Charter

Mutual Commitment

Benefiting from the opportunities of education requires a mutual commitment on the part of both student and teacher.

Students should understand that, by accepting the offer of a place at the University, they undertake responsibility for their own learning. This requires that they attend classes, tutorials, practicals and other scheduled activities and prepare assignments to the best of their ability, handing in work on time. Students should be considerate to the needs of others in their behaviour in lectures and tutorials. They should act with honesty and integrity, ensuring that work that they hand in is their own, that all the sources that they use are properly acknowledged, and that they respect and follow the rules and procedures for formal examinations.

Good teachers bring enthusiasm, originality and flair to their work. Good teaching is best fostered in a collegial atmosphere where codes of practice provide a baseline standard for professionalism, rather than serving as a prescriptive and proscriptive list of requirements. While Heads of academic departments are formally responsible to Senate for teaching and learning in their departments, individual members of the academic staff are accountable for their contribution to the university's educational mission.

Teachers should understand that, by accepting employment on the academic staff of the University, they undertake to provide all reasonable assistance to students to enable them to succeed in their studies. This requires that they deliver lectures and other scheduled classes and make every reasonable effort to make alternative arrangements if they are unable to do so. Teachers should be available for student consultations at reasonable and clearly-advertised times, and should hand back student work timeously, and with appropriate comment. Teachers' expectations of students should be clearly set out in course outlines, available before the course starts. Required reading and other preparation should be clearly specified, and teachers should ensure that such materials are available to students in the Library, in text books that are available, and in authorized course readers. Methods of evaluation and assessment that will be used in the course must be defined and described in the course outline and followed in the course. Expectations of students in formal examinations must be set out, and such formal examinations must have a fair and reasonable relationship with the ground covered in the course.

Consequently:

Students should make a formal undertaking, as part of the process of admission to the University, to take responsibility for their own learning, to respect the requirements of the courses for which they register, and to take part in the academic life of the University with integrity and honesty.

1. provide clearly written course outlines, setting out what is expected of students for the complete course, that are available well in advance of the beginning of the course, to allow students adequate time to prepare;
2. provide lists of required and recommended reading for courses, in advance of the beginning of the course, and to establish that this material is in the University Library, in local bookshops (by timeous submission of reading lists), or in course readers (with copyright clearance, and within agreed policy for course levies);
3. set out a clear and well designed system of assessment for the course, which defines what is expected of a student, and the relative value of different coursework, test and examination components; set clear and consistent DP requirements for courses, consistently enforced;
4. present lectures and tutorials in a clear manner, explaining technical terms where appropriate;
5. establish a fair and consistent approach to hearing requests for concessions and re-marking of

assignments, and for leave of absence from lectures (where attendance is compulsory), tutorials and other class sessions;

6. adhere to an agreed and published timetable for lectures, tutorials and other teaching sessions, that respects the need of students to plan their class attendance and study time;
7. ensure that they, and other teaching staff involved in their courses, are available to meet with students at advertised office hours, and interact with students without discrimination or favoritism;
8. return work submitted for assessment within a reasonable period of time, with adequate and appropriate comments and other forms of evaluation, and ahead of formal examinations, so that students can incorporate feedback in their examination preparation;
9. ensure consistent marking of examination papers and, for large classes, effective moderation of examination marking by the lecturer concerned;
10. Organize a written evaluation for each course, allowing students to express their views freely and, if they wish, anonymously, and build on the outcomes of such evaluations in adapting the course for the future.

Postgraduate students have particular needs, and the relationship between postgraduate students and their supervisors is set out in a parallel policy, which should be read in conjunction with this Teaching and Learning Charter



UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN

FACULTY OF SCIENCE

2009

Postal Address: University of Cape Town
Private Bag X3
7701 RONDEBOSCH

Dean's & Faculty Offices: Room A200, P D Hahn Building
28 Chemistry Road
Upper Campus

Office Hours: Mondays to Fridays: 08h30 - 16h30

Fax: (021) 650 2710
(021) 650 4511

Telex:

Telephones: Dean's Office (021) 650 2711
Faculty Office (021) 650 2712/3023
Accounts and Fees (021) 650 4076/2134
Admissions (021) 650 2128

Internet: UCT's Home Page <http://www.uct.ac.za>
Faculty Website <http://www.science.uct.ac.za>
Faculty Office sci-science@uct.ac.za
International Academic Programmes Office
int-iapo@uct.ac.za

Information for prospective international students can be obtained at
<http://www.uct.ac.za/misc/iapo/intro.htm>

The Registrar's, General Enquiries and Cashier's offices are located in the Wilfred & Jules Kramer Law School Building and remain open during the lunch hour. The Cashier's Office is open from 09h00 to 15h30.

This handbook is part of a series that consists of

- Book 1:** Information for applicants for undergraduate degrees and diplomas
- Book 2:** Authorities and information of record
- Book 3:** General rules and policies
- Book 4:** Academic calendar and meetings
- Book 5:** Student support and services
- Books 6-11:** Handbooks of the Faculties of Commerce, Engineering and the Built Environment, Health Sciences, Humanities, Law, Science
- Book 12:** Student fees
- Book 13:** Financial assistance for undergraduate students
- Book 14:** Financial assistance for postgraduate students

The University has made every effort to ensure the accuracy of the information in its handbooks. However, we reserve the right at any time, if circumstances dictate, to

- (i) make alterations or changes to any of the published details of the opportunities on offer; or
- (ii) add to or withdraw any of the opportunities on offer.

Our students are given every assurance that changes to opportunities will only be made under compelling circumstances and students will be fully informed as soon as possible.

CONTENTS

Telephone Numbers of Departments in the Faculty of Science	1
General Information	2
Officers in the Faculty	2
Convenors for Degree Programmes in the Faculty of Science	3
Student Advisers in the Faculty	3
Faculty Student Council.....	4
Postgraduate Centre, The	4
Fellows in the Faculty	4
Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty.....	5
UCT Book Award	5
Prizes	5
Scholarships	6
Minimum requirements for admission to undergraduate programmes	6
Degrees Offered in the Faculty of Science	7
Explanatory Notes on Course Codes	7
Rules for Degrees / Degree Programmes	8
Rules for the degree of Bachelor of Science	8
Curriculum for the BSc degree Programmes SB006, SB012, SB013 and SB014.....	14
Rules for the degree of BSc (Honours)	21
Rules for the degree of Master of Philosophy/Science	22
Rules for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy	25
Rules for the degree of Doctor of Science.....	25
Departments in the Faculty.....	27
Department of Archaeology	27
Department of Astronomy	33
Department of Botany.....	37
Department of Chemistry.....	43
Department of Computer Science.....	50
Department of Environmental & Geographical Science.....	58
Department of Geological Sciences	69
Division of Geomatics (Faculty of Engineering and the Built Environment)	75
Department of Human Biology (Faculty of Health Sciences)	80
Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.....	84
Department of Molecular and Cell Biology	101
Department of Oceanography.....	109
Department of Physics	113
Department of Statistical Sciences	122
Department of Zoology.....	130
Inter-faculty Unit	140
Electron Microscope Unit	140
Schedule of Courses	141
Index	148

TELEPHONE NUMBERS OF DEPARTMENTS IN THE FACULTY OF SCIENCE

Archaeology	650 2353
Astronomy	650 5830
Botany	650 2447
Chemistry	650 2446
Computer Science	650 2663
Environmental and Geographical Science	650 2874
Geological Sciences	650 2931
Human Biology (Faculty of Health Sciences)	406 6235
Mathematics and Applied Mathematics	650 3191
Molecular and Cell Biology	650 3270
Oceanography	650 3277
Physics	650 3326
Statistical Sciences	650 3219
Zoology	650 3603

GENERAL INFORMATION

Officers in the Faculty

Dean of the Faculty of Science:

Professor K A Driver, BSc (Hons) *Wits* MSc
Stanford PhD *Wits*

Rm A200 P D Hahn Building
sci-dean@uct.ac.za

Deputy Deans:

Associate Professor D W Gammon, PhD HDE
Cape Town (sabbatical 2009)

Rm A323 P D Hahn Building
david.gammon@uct.ac.za

Professor A P le Roex, BSc *Stell* BSc (Hons)
PhD *Cape Town*

Rm 409 Geological Sciences Building
anton.leroex@uct.ac.za

Secretary to the Dean:

E Taladia

elhaam.taladia@uct.ac.za

Academic Administration:

Rm A200 P D Hahn Building

Faculty Manager (Academic):

K T Wienand, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town*

karen.wienand@uct.ac.za

Senior Administrative Officer

(Undergraduate):

T Mohamed, BSc BCom (Hons) *UWC*

tasneem.mohamed@uct.ac.za

Administrative Officer (Postgraduate):

P Phillips, BA *Cape Town*

patricia.phillips@uct.ac.za

Administrative Officer:

Z Salie

zuraida.salie@uct.ac.za

Senior Secretaries/Receptionists:

L Masella

leverne.masella@uct.ac.za

M Mitchell, BSocSci *Cape Town*

margo.mitchell@uct.ac.za

Communications & Marketing:

Faculty Manager (Communications,

Development & Marketing):

K Thomson, BA (Hons) HDE *Cape Town*

katherine.thomson@uct.ac.za

Schools Liaison & Recruitment Officer:

S Smith, BCom (Hons) *UWC*

shanaaz.smith@uct.ac.za

Finance Administration:

Rm A200 P D Hahn Building

Faculty Manager (Finance):

S Custers, BSc *Cape Town* BCompt BCom
(Hons) *Unisa*

sue.custers@uct.ac.za

Assistant Faculty Manager (Finance):

Senior Faculty Finance Officers:

S Champion, Nat.Dipl Fin Inf Sys *CPUT*

shaahid.champion@uct.ac.za

L Roos

lily.roos@uct.ac.za

Assistant Faculty Finance Officer:

C Smith

candice.smith@uct.ac.za

Human Resource Management:

Rm A200 P D Hahn Building

Senior Human Resource Advisor:

Human Resource Advisor:

K Edwards, BCom (Hons) *Rhodes*

kirsty.edwards@uct.ac.za

Convenors for Degree Programmes in the Faculty of Science

Programme in Information Technology

Associate Professor S Berman

Rm 317 Computer Science Building
sonia.berman@uct.ac.za

Programme in Biology, Earth and Environmental Sciences

Professor J J Bolton

Rm 2.14 H W Pearson Building (Botany)
john.bolton@uct.ac.za

Programme in Chemical, Molecular & Cellular Sciences

Professor S Bourne

Rm A142 P D Hahn Building
susan.bourne@uct.ac.za

Programme in Mathematical, Physical and Statistical Sciences

Dr J Conradie

Rm 325 Mathematics Building
jurie.conradie@uct.ac.za

General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS)

Associate Professor B Davidowitz

Rm A133 P D Hahn Building (Chemistry)
bette.davidowitz@uct.ac.za

Student Advisers in the Faculty

Information Technology

Associate Professor G Marsden

Rm 316 Computer Science Building
gary.marsden@uct.ac.za

Dr M Kuttel

Rm 307 Computer Science Building
michelle.kuttel@uct.ac.za

Biology, Earth and Environmental Sciences

Dr K Winter

Rm 4.08 Environmental & Geographical
Sciences Building
kevin.winter@uct.ac.za

Dr A Verboom

Rm 3.12 H W Pearson Building (Botany)
tony.verboom@uct.ac.za

Dr C Reed

Rm 3.14 John Day Zoology Building
cecile.reed@uct.ac.za

Chemical, Molecular and Cellular Sciences

Associate Professor N Ravenscroft

Rm A144 P D Hahn Building
neil.ravenscroft@uct.ac.za

Dr L Roden

Rm 435 Molecular Biology Building
laura.roden@uct.ac.za

Dr P Meyers

Rm 202 Molecular Biology Building
paul.meyers@uct.ac.za

Mathematical, Physical and Statistical Sciences

Associate Professor A Buffler

Rm 503 R W James Building (Physics)
andy.buffler@uct.ac.za

Mr K Rafel

Rm 206.1 Mathematics Buildings
kenneth.rafel@uct.ac.za

Dr J Nyirenda

Rm 334 P D Hahn Building
juwa.nyirenda@uct.ac.za

General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS)

Ms K le Roux

Rm 206.2 Mathematics Building
kate.leroux@uct.ac.za

4 GENERAL INFORMATION

Faculty Student Council

Undergraduates:

The Science Students' Council (SSC) is elected annually by the undergraduate students in the Faculty of Science. The SSC may be contacted via email: uct_ssc@uct.ac.za. The Chairperson of the SSC for 2009 is Xabisa Mhlathuza.

Postgraduates:

The Science Postgraduate Students Association (SPGSA) is elected by the postgraduate students in the Faculty of Science. The SPGSA represents the postgraduate students on the executive committee of the University PGSA. The SPGSA may be contacted via email: hhlh001@uct.ac.za. The Chairperson of the SPGSA for 2009 is Mr P Hlahane.

The SSC & SPGSA form an important part of the Governance and Committee structures in the Faculty of Science (see booklet "Faculty of Science, Governance and Committees").

The Postgraduate Centre

The Postgraduate Centre was recently established in the Otto Beit Building, Upper Campus. This state-of-the-art facility houses the executive committee of the Postgraduate Students Association (PGSA) as well as the Postgraduate Funding Office. The centre is equipped with IT facilities and includes a seminar room. This facility is open to all Masters and Doctoral students as well as postdoctoral research fellows. Postgraduates are encouraged to make full use of this centre, in particular, the Funding Office, which administers all postgraduate bursaries and scholarships. The Postgraduate Centre may be contacted at gradcentre@uct.ac.za. or visited at www.pgfo.uct.ac.za.

Fellows in the Faculty

The Council of the University has established Fellowships for members of the permanent academic staff in recognition of original distinguished academic work of such quality as to merit special recognition. The following are Fellows in the Faculty of Science.

Professor I V Barashenkov
Professor R I Becker
Professor W J Bond
Professor G M Branch
Professor A C Brown
Professor G C L Brümmer
Professor D M Butterworth
Professor M R Caira
Professor R D Cherry
Professor A Chinsamy-Turan
Professor J W A Cleymans
Professor M J de Wit
Professor G F R Ellis
Professor A P Fairall
Professor J G Field
Associate Professor C L Griffiths
Professor J J Gurney
Professor M J Hall
Professor K A Hardie
Professor J U M Jarvis
Professor H Klump
Professor D W Kurtz
Professor A P le Roex

Professor O A M Lewis
Professor G N Louw
Professor J R E Lutjeharms
Dr N A H Millard
Professor V C Moran
Professor J R Moss
Professor L R Nassimbeni
Professor J E Parkington
Professor E G Prout
Professor D E Rawlings
Professor B D Reddy
Associate Professor F T Robb
Professor A L Rodgers
Professor J C Sealy
Dr K H Schütte
Professor W R Siegfried
Professor A M Stephen
Professor J A Thomson
Professor L G Underhill
Professor C von Holt
Professor R D Viollier
Professor B Warner
Professor D R Woods

Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty

The University makes a Distinguished Teacher Award in recognition of the importance of excellence in teaching at all levels in the University. Up to three awards are made annually. The following are recipients, in the Faculty:

1983: Professor G M Branch (Zoology)	1998: Professor J U M Jarvis (Zoology)
1984: Professor J H Webb (Mathematics)	1999: Dr T Egan (Chemistry)
1986: Associate Professor B R Davies (Zoology)	2000: Associate Professor D L Reid (Geological Sciences)
1990: Associate Professor H S T Driver (Physics)	2001: Dr V Abratt (Molecular & Cell Biology)
1992: Dr J J Conradie (Mathematics)	2002: Professor J W Lutjeharms (Ocean & Atmosphere Science)
1992: Professor J E Parkington (Archaeology)	2002: Dr S Oldfield (Environmental & Geographical Science)
1994: Professor J R Moss (Chemistry)	2002: Dr A Buffler (CHED/Physics)
1996: Professor M J Hall (Archaeology)	2003: Dr D W Gammon (Chemistry)
1996: Dr M D Picker (Zoology)	2004: Dr B Davidowitz (CHED/Chemistry)
1997: Dr N Morrison (Mathematics)	2004: Dr S Mundree (Molecular & Cell Biology)
1998: Mr A N Rynhoud (Mathematics)	2006: Dr R R Ackermann (Archaeology)
1998: Professor J A Thomson (Microbiology)	2008: Dr J O'Riain (Zoology)
1998: Associate Professor I V Barashenkov (Mathematics)	

UCT Book Award

The University makes a Book Award in recognition of the publication of books, written by University staff, that bring credit to the University.

Professor G M Branch	<i>The Living Shores of South Africa 1985</i>
Professor G M Branch, Associate Professor C L Griffiths, Mrs M L Branch and Dr L E Beckley	<i>Two Oceans - A guide to the Marine life of southern Africa 1995</i>
Professor B Warner	<i>Cataclysmic Variable Stars 1997</i>
Dr P Bruyns	<i>Stapeliads of Southern Africa & Madagascar 2008</i>

Prizes

(Further information regarding the value of prizes may be obtained from the Faculty Office.)

J Barry Hawthorne Centennial Prize

Awarded to the best student in third-year Geology who will be proceeding to Honours in the Department.

Chemistry Prize

Awarded to the best student in second-year Chemistry who will be proceeding to third-year Chemistry.

6 GENERAL INFORMATION

Dick & Dorothy Borchers Prize

Awarded to the student achieving the highest standard at the end of the second year in Botany or Astronomy.

Frank Schweitzer Memorial Prize

Awarded to one or more outstanding senior students in Archaeology, at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Gordon Percy Memorial Award

Awarded to the best student in Chemistry Honours.

Joseph Arenow Prize

Awarded at the discretion of the Dean for original postgraduate research.

Merck Prize plus medal

Awarded to the best student in third-year Chemistry who will be proceeding to Honours in the Department.

Merck Prize

Best student in Molecular & Cell Biology Honours

Purcell Memorial Prize

Awarded for the best MSc or PhD dissertation dealing with a Zoological subject.

Scholarships

(Further information regarding the value of scholarships may be obtained from the Faculty Office.)

Dr Jacob Burlak Memorial Scholarship Tenure 1 year

Awarded to the best student in second-year Mathematics, registered in the Faculty of Science, who will be proceeding to third-year Mathematics.

Myer Levinson (Emdin) Scholarship Tenure 2 years

Awarded every second year to a candidate who has obtained the BSc (Hons) degree in the first class and who proposes to pursue further study.

Twamley Undergraduate Scholarship Tenure 1 year

Awarded for the most outstanding academic performance at the end of the first year of study.

Minimum requirements for admission to an undergraduate degree

A candidate for the degree of bachelor must have obtained a National Senior Certificate endorsed by Umalusi to state that he or she has met the minimum admission requirements for degree study, or a matriculation certificate or have obtained a Senior Certificate endorsed to state that he or she has met the matriculation requirements or an exemption certificate issued by the Matriculation Board. Council and Senate may, in addition, prescribe, as a prerequisite for admission to any programme or course, the attaining of a specified standard in specified subjects at the matriculation or equivalent examination. (Where these have been prescribed, they are set out in the Admission Policy.) The Board's website address is <http://hesa-enrol.ac.za/mb>

Further information on Faculty entrance requirements can be found in Book 1, Information for Applicants for Undergraduate Degrees and Diplomas and in the Undergraduate Prospectus.

Degrees Offered in the Faculty of Science

- i) Bachelor of Science (BSc) degree
 - SB006 - Programme in Information Technology**
 - SB012 - Programme in Biology, Earth & Environmental Sciences**
 - SB013 - Programme in Chemical, Molecular and Cellular Sciences**
 - SB014 - Programme in Mathematical, Physical and Statistical Sciences**
 - SB011 - General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS)**

Note: First-year students who are admitted onto this degree programme will register for one of the degree programmes listed above in subsequent years of study.

- ii) Bachelor of Science (Honours) (BSc (Hons)) degree
- iii) Master of Science (MSc) degree
- iv) Master of Philosophy (MPhil) degree
- v) Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) degree
- vi) Doctor of Science (DSc) degree

Explanatory Notes on Course Codes

The curriculum for the bachelor degree in the Faculty of Science is based on a semester system, where a semester course is equivalent to a half-year of academic study. Courses for the bachelor degree may be completed in one semester (ie. a "half-course") or over two semesters (ie. a "full-course"). In this respect, the following codes are used:

A	1st term quarter-course
B	2nd term quarter-course
C	3rd term quarter-course
D	4th term quarter-course
F	1st semester half-course
S	2nd semester half-course
H	half-course taught over the whole year*
W	full-course taught over the whole year
Z	any other combination

* H courses in GEPS may be of the "intensive type" ie: half credit but full contact time over the whole year.

Every course in this handbook has a course name and a course code. With the introduction of the PeopleSoft Student Administration system, the structure of course codes has changed, by the addition of one numeric character (from a total of seven characters to a total of eight characters).

<i>CEM1000W</i>	<i>Chemistry 1000</i>
CEM	designates a Chemistry course
1	designates a first-year course
000	serves to distinguish this from other first-year Chemistry courses
W	designates a full-course taught over the whole year
<i>ZOO3002F</i>	<i>Marine Ecology</i>
ZOO	designates a Zoology course
3	designates a third-year course
002	serves to distinguish this from other third-year Zoology courses
F	designates a first semester course.

NOTE: second-year and third-year courses are usually regarded as 'senior courses' in terms of meeting the curriculum requirements for the bachelor degree in the Faculty of Science.

RULES FOR DEGREES / DEGREE PROGRAMMES

The following rules are specific to the Faculty of Science. They must be read in conjunction with the general University rules (G and GB) for degrees and diplomas in Book 3 of this series.

General rules for Bachelor of Science degree programmes

- FB1 Except by permission of Senate, all students registered for the first time in the Faculty of Science from 1999 onwards, will be subject to the rules and curricula for degree programmes SB006, SB011-SB014 inclusive.
Transferring students will be subject to the rules and curricula for degree programmes SB006, SB011-SB014 inclusive. Note: except by permission of Senate, transferring students may not register on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS), SB011.

Duration of the BSc degree

- FB2 The curriculum for the Bachelor of Science degree shall extend over not less than three academic years of study.
The curriculum which includes the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS), SB011, will usually extend over four academic years of study.
NOTE: At the discretion of the Dean, the Faculty may admit candidates for the BSc degree who, due to special circumstances, are unable to study on a full-time basis. Students would complete the degree over an extended period of time by taking a reduced number of courses each year, but would attend normal lectures and practicals as scheduled in the University timetable. All enquiries should be directed to the Faculty Manager (Academic).

Restriction on registration and examination

- FB3 A student shall not register for more than:
- the equivalent of four half-courses in each semester in the first academic year of study;
 - the equivalent of three half-courses in each semester in any other year of study.
- This restriction also applies to the number of courses for which a student may be examined.
- Policy*
- Permission of Senate to waive these restrictions will only be considered under certain circumstances, as follows:
- where a student has obtained an average of 50% or more in all courses written in the most recent set of ordinary examinations and/or tests, (ie. in June or November);
 - where a first-time entering undergraduate in the first semester has obtained a weighted score of 55 points or more in the Senior Certificate examinations or 50 points or more in the National Senior Certificate examinations;
 - waivers to students who satisfy (a) or (b) above will depend on an assessment, by a Student Adviser or Programme Convenor, of the merits of each individual case.

Supplementary examinations

First-year students

FB4.1 The Senate may permit a first-year student who has registered for a bachelor degree in the Faculty of Science, and who has failed the ordinary examination in one or more courses, to write supplementary examinations in a maximum of three full-year courses or the equivalent.

Policy and guidelines:

- (a) A supplementary examination may be awarded to a student who has obtained marks from 40% to 49% in first-year courses in Mathematics. For MAM1000W, MAM1043H and MAM1044H, supplementary examinations will only be awarded to students who obtain from 45% to 49%.
- (b) A supplementary examination may be awarded to a student who has obtained marks from 45% to 49% in a first-year course in any Science Faculty department.
- (c) A department (other than Mathematics - see (a)) may recommend the award of a supplementary examination to a student who has obtained marks from 40% to 44% in a first-year course provided that the Head of the Department submits a written recommendation and motivation to reach the Dean before the meeting of the Faculty Examinations Committee.
- (d) Where a student is awarded supplementary examinations in more than three full-year courses or the equivalent, he/she must choose which supplementary examinations to write in terms of the restriction detailed in FB4.1 above.

Students other than first-year students

FB4.2 The Senate may permit a student other than a first-year student to write supplementary examinations in a maximum of two full-year courses or the equivalent, only one of which may be a third-year course.

Policy and guidelines:

- (a) Departments will act according to guidelines (a), (b) and (c) listed under FB4.1 in respect of first-year courses.
- (b) A supplementary examination in a senior course may be awarded if the mark obtained is at least 45% and if the department concerned recommends it.
- (c) A finalist who has obtained marks from 40% to 44% in any course, which is the only credit outstanding for the award of the degree, may be awarded a supplementary examination if the department concerned recommends it.
- (d) Where a student is awarded supplementary examinations in more than two full-year courses or the equivalent, or more than one full-year third-year course or the equivalent, he/she must choose which supplementary examinations to write in terms of the restriction detailed in FB4.2 above.

FB4.3 The decision on whether or not to award a supplementary examination, in accordance with the policies outlined above, shall be taken by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of the Department concerned and be based on the student's academic performance in the course concerned, except that the Senate may decide to award, or refuse to award, a supplementary examination in a course or courses taking account of the student's overall academic record.

Refusal of readmission to the Faculty and related matters

SB006, SB012, SCB013 and SB014 Degree Programmes (Bachelor of Science)

- FB5.1 Except by permission of Senate, a student who has registered for the Bachelor of Science degree, shall not be permitted to reregister in the Faculty unless he or she has completed:
- one and a half courses or the equivalent, including one and a half courses specific to a specialisation, by the end of the first year;
 - three and a half courses or the equivalent, including all first-year courses required for a specialisation, by the end of the second year;
 - five and a half courses or equivalent, including one and a half senior courses, by the end of the third year;
 - seven and a half courses, including three senior courses, by the end of the fourth year.
 - Students are expected to complete all the requirements of the degree by the end of the fifth year.
- FB5.2 In addition to the readmission requirements listed in FB5.1 above, the fulfilment of other specific requirements may be required by individual degree programmes. These requirements will be communicated to students.

SB011 General Entry for Programmes in Science (Bachelor of Science)

- FB5.3 Except by permission of Senate, a student who registered initially on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS), SB011, shall not be permitted to reregister in the Faculty unless he or she has completed:
- one and a half courses or the equivalent, including one course specific to a specialisation, by the end of the first year;
 - three full-year courses or the equivalent, including two and a half courses specific to a specialisation, by the end of the second year;
 - five full-year courses or the equivalent, of which at least one shall be a senior course, by the end of the third year;
 - seven full-year courses, of which at least two and a half shall be senior courses, by the end of the fourth year.

General

- FB5.4 Except by permission of Senate, where the academic circumstances of a student do not permit the application of Rules FB5.1-FB5.5, a student shall be required to complete the equivalent of two full-year courses per year of study.
- FB5.5 In special cases, or in the case of undergraduates transferring from other faculties or other universities, the Senate may impose probationary academic requirements which must be fulfilled before the student shall be permitted to renew his or her registration in the Faculty in the following year.
- FB5.6 A student who fails to complete the University examination in a course after two years of study may, at the discretion of Senate, be excluded from further attendance of such a course.
- FB5.7 Except by permission of Senate, a student who has been refused permission to reregister in another faculty may not register in the Faculty of Science.
- FB5.8 Reregistration in the Faculty does not imply a right to register for senior courses in subjects for which the student has completed prerequisite courses.

Transfer from other faculties into the Faculty of Science

- FB6.1 Except by permission of Senate, a student who, after a year or more in another faculty, wishes to register in the Faculty of Science, shall, as a minimum:
- (a) satisfy the normal school-leaving entrance requirements for admission to the BSc degree, and
 - (b) have complied with the provisions of Rule FB5.1 - FB5.3 as appropriate, as applicable *mutatis mutandis*.
- FB6.2 Except by permission of Senate, a student who, after a year or more in another faculty wishes to register in the Faculty of Science, may not register on the General Entry for Programmes in Science, SB011.

Distinction

The Bachelor of Science (BSc) degree may be awarded with distinction, and with distinction in one or more specialisation.

FB8.1 Rules for distinction in a specialisation (for 2009)

- (a) In order to obtain a distinction in a specialisation, a student will be required to obtain first class passes in the courses listed below, except as specified in (b) and (c):

Actuarial Science:	Two of STA2004F, STA2005S, BUS2013F and two of BUS3022F, BUS3023S, STA3041F, STA3043S, STA3044S
Applied Computing:	Two of CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2003S; and two of CSC3002F, CSC3003S, CSC3020H
Applied Mathematics:	MAM2046W (or two of MAM2047H, 2048H and 2043S) and MAM3040W (or MAM3041H and MAM3048H)
Archaeology:	Four senior half-courses in Archaeology
Astrophysics:	AST2002S, AST3002F, AST3003S
Atmospheric Science:	Two of EGS2012S, SEA2003F (or SEA2000F), SEA2002S and two of EGS3012S, EGS3013F, SEA3002F
Biochemistry:	MCB2014F, MCB2015S, two 3000-level half-courses, coded MCB, which are required for the specialisation in Biochemistry
Biodiversity & Evolutionary Biology:	BIO2008F, BIO2006F, BIO2009S, BIO3010F, BIO3005S
Bioinformatics:	Two senior half-courses coded CSC and two senior half-courses coded MCB
Biotechnology:	MCB2009C, CHE2039D, MCB2007F, MCB3010S, MCB3019F, MCB3022S or MCB3024S
Botany:	Four senior half-courses coded BOT or BIO which are required for a specialisation in Botany

12 RULES FOR DEGREES / DEGREE PROGRAMMES

Business Computing:	Two of CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2003S; and two of CSC3002F, CSC3003S, CSC3020H
Chemistry:	CEM2007F, CEM2008S, CEM3005W
Computer Engineering:	Two of CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2003S; and two of CSC3002F, CSC3003S, CSC3020H
Computer Games Design:	Two of CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2003S; and two of CSC3002F, CSC3003S, CSC3020H
Computer Science:	Two of CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2003S; and two of CSC3002F, CSC3003S, CSC3020H
Demographics & Statistics:	EGS3016F, EGS3017S, EGS3018F and EGS3019S
Ecology:	Two of BIO2004F, BIO2003S, BIO2006S, BIO2009; BIO3006F plus one of BIO3011S or BIO3003S
Environmental & Geographical Science:	EGS2013F and EGS2014S (or two of EGS2010F, EGS2011S, EGS2012S); Two of EGS3012S, EGS3020F (or EGS3014S), EGS3021F (or EGS3013F), EGS3022S (or EGS3015S)
Genetics:	MCB2018F, MCB2019S, two 3000-level half-courses, coded MCB, which are required for the specialisation in Genetics
Geoinformatics:	APG1016S, APG2015F, APG3011F, APG3012S and APG4004A
Geology:	GEO2001F, GEO2004S, GEO3005F and GEO3001S
Marine Biology:	Two of BIO2004F, SEA2003F, BIO2006F, BIO2009S; BIO3002S plus one of SEA3002F, BIO3001F, BIO3011S
Mathematics:	MAM2000W and MAM3000W
Microbiology:	MCB2016F, MCB2017S, two 3000-level half-courses, coded MCB, which are required for the specialisation in Microbiology
Ocean & Atmosphere Science:	SEA2003F (or SEA2000F), SEA2002S, SEA3002F and EGS3012S
Physics:	PHY2014F, PHY2015S, PHY3021F, PHY3022S
Physiology:	HUB2019F, HUB2021S, HUB3006F, HUB3007S
Statistics:	STA2004F, STA2005S; STA3041F, STA3043S
Zoology:	Two of BIO2009S, BIO2003S, BIO2008F, BIO2004F; BIO3001F plus BIO3010F or BIO3003S

- (b) If a student obtains a first and an upper second class in two half-courses at second-year level listed in (a) above, the marks obtained in these half-courses shall be

averaged. If this average is 75% or more the student will be regarded, for this purpose only, as having obtained first class passes in both these half-courses. The same applies at the third-year level.

- (c) In special cases the Board of the Faculty may replace a first class in one of the courses listed above by a first class pass in a cognate course (which has not been used for distinction in that cognate subject).

FB8.2 Rules for distinction in the BSc degree as a whole (for 2009)

To obtain a distinction in the degree as a whole, a student must

- (a) obtain a distinction in at least one specialisation (rule FB8.1); and
 (b) obtain first class passes in at least six courses (or the equivalent in half-courses), including at least four senior courses or obtain an aggregate of at least 75% for each of four first-year courses, three second-year courses and two third-year courses obtained in a minimum period. (The minimum period will usually be three years).

In applying the rules above, only passes at the first attempt are taken into account, i.e. ordinary examinations in June or December and/or deferred examinations will be taken into account, but not any supplementary examinations.

Class Medals

A class medal may be awarded to a student who has demonstrated special ability in a course, but an award shall not be made if there is no candidate of sufficient merit. Only one medal shall be awarded for each course. Students undertaking a course for a second time are not eligible for the award of a medal.

Dean's Merit List

Students who obtain consistently good results may be included on the Dean's Merit List, issued annually, in recognition of their academic achievements. To qualify for the Dean's Merit List in a particular year, a student must normally:

- (a) have taken the equivalent of the following minimum number of courses:
SB006, SB012 - SB014:
 first year: four full courses
 second year: three full courses, two of which must be senior courses
 third year: two full courses, one of which must be a third-year course
SB011:
 first year: two full courses
 second year: two full courses
 third year: three full courses, two of which must be senior courses
 fourth year: two full courses, one of which must be a third year course
- (b) have passed all these courses in the year;
 (c) not be repeating courses;
 (d) have obtained a weighted average of over 70% for the courses taken.

Rules for the Bachelor degree curricula in the Faculty of Science

Curriculum rules for SB006, SB012, SB013 and SB014 (Degree Programmes)

(Refer to rule FB1)

All bachelor degree curricula in the Faculty of Science include courses carefully selected to provide adequate foundation for and depth in one or more areas of specialisation, as well as providing generic skills to function as a graduate. All curricula therefore require students to achieve skills in numeracy, computer literacy, problem solving and communication in the context of their specialisations.

Curricula are organised and managed in Programmes which bring together areas of specialisation which are in similar fields of scientific enquiry or have similar foundational requirements.

Students must choose one or more area of specialisation, with curricula including compulsory courses as outlined under rules FB9.6 and FB9.7 below. The general rules governing BSc curricula are rules FB9.1 to FB9.5 which stipulate the minimum number of courses required, and the range of choices possible.

All curricula can lead to postgraduate study.

Rules for curricula containing specialisation fields in programmes SB006, SB012, SB013 and SB014

Total number of courses

FB9.1 The curriculum shall include the equivalent of at least nine full-year courses of which at least six full-year courses must be Science courses. With the permission of the Programme Convenor, a maximum of three full-year courses or the equivalent may be taken from other Faculties.

Exceptions to this rule have been approved for the specialisations Actuarial Science and Business Computing, where the curriculum consists of five and five and a half (or equivalent) Science courses respectively.

Number of senior courses

FB9.2 The curriculum shall include the equivalent of at least four full-year senior courses or the equivalent, of which at least two shall be Science courses.

Mathematics

FB9.3 The curriculum shall include at least a half-course in Mathematics.

Elective courses

FB9.4 All courses in the Science Faculty may be taken as elective courses. Courses offered in other faculties may also be taken as elective courses with the permission of the Programme Convenor.

FB9.5 In order to satisfy the requirement of competencies including numeracy, computer literacy, problem solving and communication or as a measure of integrated assessment, the Programme Convenor may add one or more compulsory courses to a curriculum.

Specialisation(s)

FB9.6 The curriculum shall include a specialisation from the following list, grouped according to programmes:

Programme in Information Technology (IT SB006)

Applied Computing; Bioinformatics; Business Computing; Computer Engineering; Computer Games Design; Computer Science.

Programme in Biology, Earth and Environmental Sciences (BEES SB012)

Archaeology; Atmospheric Science; Ecology; Environmental & Geographical Science; Biodiversity & Evolutionary Biology; Geology; Marine Biology; Ocean & Atmosphere Science; Zoology; Geoinformatics (Geoinformatics must be accompanied by a Science specialisation.)

Programme in Chemical, Molecular and Cellular Sciences (CMCS SB013)

Biochemistry; Chemistry; Genetics; Human Bioscience; Microbiology; Physiology (Physiology must be accompanied by a Science specialisation.)

Programme in Mathematical, Physical and Statistical Sciences (MPSS SB014)

Actuarial Science; Applied Mathematics; Astrophysics; Demographics & Statistics; Mathematics; Physics; Statistics.

FB9.7 The curriculum may include more than one specialisations which may be chosen from any programme in the Faculty of Science. If the curriculum includes specialisations from two or more programmes in the Faculty of Science, the student must indicate a primary specialisation and therefore in which programme they wish to be registered. A third-year module/course may be counted towards more than one specialisation. However, the curriculum must contain at least two distinct third-year semester courses recognised by the Faculty for each specialisation.

Compulsory courses to be completed for each specialisation:

Note: The compulsory courses listed below are the minimum which a student must complete for the specialisation. Certain courses may supersede the courses specified eg. MAM2000W may supersede MAM2001H.

Programme in Information Technology

Specialisation in APPLIED COMPUTING

1000-level courses: CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016S, MAM1000W (or equivalent)

2000-level courses: CSC2001F, CSC2002S

3000-level courses: CSC3002F, CSC3003S and a full 3000-level course in another discipline

Note: It is possible to specialise in Geoinformatics by including the following courses: CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016S, MAM1000W, CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC3002F, CSC3003S, APG2015F, APG2018X, APG3011F and a half-course equivalent selected from APG2014S, APG2026F, APG3012S, APG4004A + APG3016C. MAM2004H/2000W with module 2LA is required for APG2014S.

It is possible to major in Psychology only if MAM1043H and STA1006S are taken in first year, i.e. only in the case of the fully-prescribed curriculum comprising: CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016S, MAM1000W, PSY1001W, MAM1043H, STA1006S, CSC2001F, CSC2002S, three second-year semester courses in Psychology, CSC3002F, CSC3003S, three third-year semester courses in Psychology (PSY3007F is compulsory.)

16 RULES FOR DEGREES / DEGREE PROGRAMMES

Specialisation in BIOINFORMATICS

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016S, MAM1000W (or equivalent), and STA1006/STA1000/STA1007

2000-level courses: CSC2001F, CSC2002S and two 2000-level MCB courses

3000-level courses: CSC3002F, CSC3003S, MCB3012Z and two additional 3000-level MCB courses

Note: MAM2004H and STA2004F are strongly recommended.

Specialisation in BUSINESS COMPUTING

1000-level courses: CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016S, MAM1000W (or equivalent), STA1006/1000S, and either BUS1004W or an approved full-course equivalent selected from ACC1006F, ACC1011S, BUS1005F, ECO1010F, ECO1011S, ECO1006F

2000-level courses: CSC2001F, CSC2002S, INF2009F, INF2011S

3000-level courses: CSC3002F, CSC3003S, INF3011F, INF3012S

Specialisation in COMPUTER ENGINEERING

1000-level courses: CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016S, MAM1000W (or equivalent), (PHY1031F + PHY1032S) or equivalent

2000-level courses: CSC2001F, CSC2002S, EEE2040F, EEE2026S

3000-level courses: CSC3002F, CSC3003S and at least a half course equivalent selected from EEE3067W (EEE3064W + EEE4096S), EEE3077W (EEE3064W + EEE3074W), EEE3078W (EEE3064W + EEE3074W + EEE4096S) or EEE3079W (EEE3074W + EEE4096S).

Note: BUS1004W is strongly recommended

Specialisation in COMPUTER GAMES DESIGN

1000-level courses: CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016F, MAM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1043H

2000-level courses: CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2003S

3000-level courses: CSC3002F, CSC3003S, CSC3020H

Note: MAM1044H is strongly recommended.

Specialisation in COMPUTER SCIENCE:

1000-level courses: CSC1015F or CSC1018F, CSC1016S, MAM1000W (or equivalent), and one of MAM1043H or MAM1044H or STA1006S

2000-level courses: CSC2001F, CSC2002S, MAM2001H

3000-level courses: CSC3002F, CSC3003S

Note: BUS1004W is strongly recommended

Note: It is possible for IT programme students to take "language" courses (such as English) as part of their degree.

Programme in Biology, Earth and Environmental Sciences

Specialisation in ARCHAEOLOGY

1000-level courses: GEO1009F (or EGS1004S), MAM1004F + STA1000S (or equivalent) or MAM1000W

2000-level courses: AGE2011S, AGE2012F

3000-level courses: AGE3013H and at least one of AGE3011F and AGE3012S

Specialisation in ATMOSPHERIC SCIENCE

1000-level courses: GEO1009F, MAM1000W (or equivalent), PHY1031F + PHY1032S (or equivalent), CEM1000W (or equivalent)

2000-level courses: EGS2013F (or EGS2012S), SEA2003F, SEA2002S, MAM2052F

3000-level courses: EGS3012S, EGS3021F (or EGS3013F) [or EGS3020F (or

EGS3014S) if no EGS2013F (or EGS2010F)], SEA3002F

Specialisation in BIODIVERSITY & EVOLUTIONARY BIOLOGY

1000-level courses: BIO1000F, BIO1004S, MAM1004F + STA1007S (or equivalent), CEM1000W

2000-level courses: BIO2008F, BIO2006S, BIO2009S

3000-level courses: BIO3010F, BIO3005S

Specialisation in ECOLOGY

1000-level courses: BIO1000F, BIO1004S, MAM1004F + STA1007S (or equivalent), CEM1000W

2000-level courses: BIO2004F, BIO2003S, BIO2006S or BIO2009S

3000-level courses: BIO3006F, BIO3011S or BIO3003S

Specialisation in ENVIRONMENTAL & GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

1000-level courses: GEO1009F (or EGS1004S), EGS1003S (or EGS1002S), MAM1004F + STA1000S (or equivalent) or MAM1000W

2000-level courses: EGS2013F or EGS2014S (or two of EGS2010F, EGS2011S, EGS2012S)

3000-level courses: Two of EGS3020F (or EGS3014S), EGS3021F (or EGS3013F), EGS3012S, EGS3022S (or EGS3015S)

Specialisation in GEOLOGY

1000-level courses: GEO1009F (or EGS1004S), MAM1004F + STA1000S (or equivalent) or MAM1000W, GEO1006S, CEM1000W (or equivalent)

2000-level courses: GEO2001F, GEO2004S, MAM2052F, GEO2005X*

3000-level courses: GEO3005F, GEO3001S

* field work course to be taken over second and third years of study

Specialisation in MARINE BIOLOGY

1000-level courses: BIO1000F, BIO1004S, MAM1004F + STA1007S (or equivalent), GEO1009F, CEM1000W

2000-level courses: BIO2004F, SEA2003F, BIO2009S or BIO2006S

3000-level courses: BIO3002S, and one of BIO3001F, SEA3002F, BIO3011S

Specialisation in OCEAN & ATMOSPHERE SCIENCE

1000-level courses: GEO1009F (or EGS1004S), MAM1004F + STA1000S (or equivalent) or MAM1000W, PHY1031F (or equivalent)

2000-level courses: SEA2003F, SEA2002S

3000-level courses: SEA3002F, EGS3012S

Specialisation in GEOINFORMATICS

1000-level courses: CSC1015F or APG1015F, APG1016S, MAM1004F + STA1000S (or equivalent) or MAM1000W, PHY1031F (or equivalent)

2000-level courses: APG2015F, APG2018X plus APG2014S or APG2026F or APG3012S plus any other 2000-level courses towards a Science specialisation

3000-level courses: APG3011F plus APG2014S or APG2026F or APG3012S or APG3016C and APG4004A plus any other 3000-level courses towards a Science specialisation

Note: MAM1000W and either MAM2000W or MAM2004H (module 2LA plus any other module) are required for APG2014S.

This specialisation must be taken together with a Science specialisation.

Specialisation in ZOOLOGY

1000-level courses: BIO1000F, BIO1004S, MAM1004F + STA1007S (or equivalent), CEM1000W

2000-level courses: BIO2009S, BIO2003S, BIO2008F or BIO2004F

3000-level courses: BIO3001F and BIO3010F or BIO3003S

Programme in Chemical, Molecular and Cellular Sciences

Specialisations for students first registered before 2007:

Specialisation in BIOCHEMISTRY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S). Highly recommended: BIO1000F and 1000-level Physics

2000-level courses: MCB2000F, MCB2001S

3000-level courses: MCB3020S, MCB3019F or MCB3024S or MCB2019S, MCB3012Z

Specialisation in BIOTECHNOLOGY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, BIO1000F, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S)

2000-level courses: MCB2000F, MCB2001S, MCB2005F, MCB2006S or CEM2013S, MCB2007F, MCB2009C, CHE2039D.

3000-level courses: MCB3022S, MCB3019F or MCB3024S, MCB3012Z

Specialisation in CHEMISTRY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1000W (or equivalent), PHY1031F + PHY1032S (or equivalent)

2000-level courses: CEM2007F, CEM2008S

3000-level courses: CEM3005W

Note: Completion of MAM2052F is highly recommended

Specialisation in GENETICS & DEVELOPMENT

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, BIO1000F, BIO1004S, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S)

2000-level courses: MCB2000F, MCB2001S, MCB2003F, MCB2013S

3000-level courses: MCB3019F, MCB3024S, MCB3012Z.

Specialisation in HUMAN BIOSCIENCE

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, BIO1000F, BIO1004S, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S), PSY1001W

2000-level courses: HUB2019F, HUB2021S, two of PSY2008F, PSY2009F, PSY2003S or PSY2010S. Any 2000-level Science full course or equivalent approved by the Programme Convenor

3000-level courses: HUB3006F, HUB3007S, PSY3007F/S, two of PSY3008F, PSY3009F, PSY3004S, PSY3005S or PSY3010S

Specialisation in MICROBIOLOGY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, BIO1000F, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S)

2000-level courses: MCB2005F, MCB2006S, MCB2000F, MCB2001S

3000-level courses: MCB3021F, MCB3019F or MCB3024S, MCB3012Z

Specialisation in PHYSIOLOGY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, BIO1000F, BIO1004S, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S). Strongly recommended:

1000-level Physics

2000-level courses: HUB2019F, HUB2021S. Any SB013 Science full course or

equivalent

3000-level courses: HUB3006F, HUB3007S. Any SB013 Science full course or equivalent.

Note: This specialisation must be taken together with a Science specialisation

Specialisations for those entering first-year in 2007 or later:

Specialisation in BIOCHEMISTRY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S). Highly recommended: BIO1000F and 1000-level Physics

2000-level courses: MCB2014F, MCB2015S. Highly recommended: MCB2019S

3000-level courses: MCB3020F/S, MCB3019F (highly recommended) or MCB3022S or MCB3024S, MCB3012Z

Specialisation in CHEMISTRY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1000W (or equivalent), PHY1031F, PHY1032S (or equivalent)

2000-level courses: CEM2007F, CEM2008S.

3000-level courses: CEM3005W

Note: Completion of MAM2052F is highly recommended.

Specialisation in GENETICS

1000-level courses: CEM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S), BIO1000F, BIO1004S

2000-level courses: MCB2018F, MCB2019S

3000-level courses: MCB3019F, MCB3023S or MCB3024S, MCB3012Z.

Specialisation in HUMAN BIOSCIENCE

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S), BIO1000F, BIO1004S, PSY1001W

2000-level courses: HUB2019F, HUB2021S, two of PSY2008F, PSY2009F, PSY2003S or PSY2010S, any 2000-level Science full course or equivalent approved by the Programme Convenor

3000-level courses: HUB3006F, HUB3007S, PSY3007F/S, two of PSY3008F, PSY3009F, PSY3004S, PSY3005S or PSY3010S

Specialisation in MICROBIOLOGY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S), BIO1000F

2000-level courses: MCB2016F, MCB2017S. Highly recommended: MCB2014F and MCB2015S

3000-level courses: MCB3021F, MCB3019F or MCB3022S or MCB3024S, MCB3012Z

Specialisation in PHYSIOLOGY

1000-level courses: CEM1000W, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H + STA1007S or STA1000S), BIO1000F, BIO1004S. Highly recommended: 1000-level Physics

2000-level courses: HUB2019F, HUB2021S. Any SB013 Science full course or equivalent

3000-level courses: HUB3006F, HUB3007S. Any SB013 Science full course or equivalent.

Note: This specialisation must be taken together with a Science specialisation

Programme in Mathematical, Physical and Statistical Sciences

Specialisation in ACTUARIAL SCIENCE

1000-level courses*: MAM1000W, ECO1010F, ECO1011S, ACC1006F, ACC1011S, STA1006S, BUS1003H

2000-level courses**: MAM2000W, STA2004F, STA2005S, BUS2016H, BUS2019S***

3000-level courses: BUS3018F, BUS3024S, STA3041F, STA3043S, STA3045F

** It is possible for Actuarial Science students to take CSC1015F in the first semester of their first-year in addition to the courses listed above.*

**** Entry to BUS2016H (effectively entry to 2nd-year) is governed by the continuation criteria set out in the Commerce Handbook 2009.**

***** The course BUS2019S is optional, but credit for all three of the courses ACC1006F, ACC1011S and BUS2019S is needed to be eligible for exemption from the CT2 examination of the Institute (and Faculty) of Actuaries. Normally BUS1010F/S is a prerequisite and ECO2003F and ECO2004S are co-requisites for BUS2019S, but these requirements will be waived for Actuarial Science students.**

Please note that students who change from the specialisation in Actuarial Science to another specialisation will need to satisfy the requirements of that specialisation; in particular, their curriculum should include at least six full year Science courses.

Specialisation in APPLIED MATHEMATICS

1000-level courses: MAM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1043H, MAM1044H, STA1006S

2000-level courses: MAM2000W, MAM2046W

3000-level courses: MAM3040W

Specialisation in ASTROPHYSICS

1000-level courses: PHY1004W, MAM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1043H,

MAM1044H or STA1006S, AST1000F highly recommended

2000-level courses: AST2002S, MAM2000W or (MAM2004H + MAM2046W),

PHY2014F, PHY2015S

3000-level courses: AST3002F, AST3003S, PHY3021F, PHY3022S or MAM3041H

Note: It is possible to focus on the area of Astro-Engineering by including the following Engineering courses (or their equivalent) EEE2035F, EEE2039W, EEE3086F, EEE3077W.

Specialisation in DEMOGRAPHY AND STATISTICS

1000-level courses: MAM1000W, STA1006S or equivalent, ECO1010F, ECO1010S and DOH1000F or EGS1002S

2000-level courses: MAM2000W, STA2004F, STA2005S and **either** SOC2019F or EGS2011S

3000-level courses: STA3041F, STA3043S, EGS3016F, EGS3017S, EGS3018F, EGS3019S

Specialisation in MATHEMATICS

1000-level courses: MAM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1043H, STA1006S

2000-level courses: MAM2000W

3000-level courses: MAM3000W

Specialisation in PHYSICS

1000-level courses: PHY1004W, MAM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1043H,

MAM1044H or STA1006S

2000-level courses: PHY2014F, PHY2015S, MAM2000W or (MAM2046W +

MAM2004H),

3000-level courses: PHY3021F, PHY3022S

Specialisation in STATISTICS

1000-level courses: MAM1000W (or equivalent), MAM1043H or CSC1015F, STA1006S

2000-level courses: STA2004F, STA2005S

3000-level courses: STA3041F, STA3043S

Curriculum rules for the General Entry for Programmes in Science, SB011

The General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS) provides students with the opportunity to establish a sound educational foundation for further university studies. GEPS is run in association with the Academic Development Programme (ADP). GEPS comprises a combination of intensive first-year half-courses in Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry, Computer Science and Earth Systems Science. Admission onto GEPS is restricted and is offered to applicants at the Dean's discretion.

All degree programmes, SB006, SB012 - SB014, offered in the Faculty of Science are accessible via GEPS, and students will register for one of these degree programmes after their first year of study.

A typical curriculum for the first year on the General Entry for Programmes in Science will consist of four (intensive) half-courses completed over the full year (i.e. "H" courses).

FB10.1 The curriculum for SB011, is subject to the general rules for the Bachelor of Science degree (FB10.1 - FB10.3 inclusive) and subject to individual requirements, e.g. course prerequisites as specified by each Department.

FB10.2 The standard curriculum for the degree programme SB011 is as follows:
MAM1005H and three from CEM1009H, CSC1010H, AGE1003H or PHY1023H.

FB10.3 Except with the approval of the Dean a student is constrained to the courses recorded in the curricula for the degree programme, SB011.

NOTE: The Faculty of Science reserves the right to change the details of the curricula for all degree programmes, SB006, SB011 - SB014, and reserves the right to change or add to degree programme curricula or to discontinue any degree programme curriculum offered in the Faculty of Science, depending on circumstances and demand.

Rules for the degree of BSc (Hons)

(To be read with General Rules on Honours Degrees (G and GH) in Book 3 of this series).

Admission

- FH1 A person shall not be admitted as a candidate for the degree unless he or she
- (a) is a graduate of the Faculty of Science who has been awarded a bachelors degree in the discipline in which he or she proposes to proceed to Honours, or has subsequently met the conditions which would have enabled him or her to be awarded the degree in the Faculty with that subject as a discipline; or
 - (b) is a graduate of any other faculty in the University who has completed courses and fulfilled conditions accepted by Senate as equivalent to those required under (a) above; or
 - (c) is a graduate of any other university recognised by Senate for such purposes who has completed courses and has fulfilled conditions accepted by Senate as equivalent to those required under (a) above.

22 RULES FOR DEGREES / DEGREE PROGRAMMES

Duration

FH2.1 Subject to the provisions of rule GH3 the BSc (Hons) is offered over a period of not less than one academic year. Normally, candidates are required to complete the programme within one academic year.

FH2.2 In exceptional circumstances, where an application for the BSc (Hons) degree does not have an adequate undergraduate academic background, he/she shall, with permission of the Head of Department, register as an occasional student to complete preparatory courses. On completion of such courses, he/she will be permitted to enrol on the Honours course.

NOTE: Students following rule FH2.2 are required to apply for admission to the Honours programme for the following year.

FH2.3 In exceptional circumstances, the Senate may admit a suitably qualified student as a part-time candidate for the Honours degree. Any such candidate shall be required to complete the programme within two academic years.

Subjects

FH3 The degree may be conferred in any one of the following subjects:

Actuarial Science	Industrial Mathematics
Applied Mathematics	Information Technology
Archaeology	Mathematical Statistics
Archaeology & Environmental Science	Mathematical & Theoretical Physics
Astrophysics & Space Science	Mathematics
Atmospheric Science	Mathematics of Computer Science
Botany	Molecular & Cell Biology
Chemistry	Ocean & Atmosphere Science
Computer Science	Physics
Disaster Risk Science	Statistics
Environmental & Geographical Science	Theoretical Physics
Geochemistry	Zoology
Geology	

Restriction on registration

FH4 A student may not take any course(s) other than those prescribed by the Honours programme for which he or she is registered.

NOTE: Rule FH4 notwithstanding, students registered for BSc (Hons) in Actuarial Science may be permitted to repeat not more than one full-course (or two half-courses) which they have already passed at UCT, for the purposes of improving their marks in order to obtain exemption from the corresponding professional examinations. In this case they will register as occasional students concurrently with the Honours programme.

Rules for the degree of Master of Philosophy/Science

(To be read with General Rules on Master Degrees (G and GM) in Book 3 of this series).

Master of Philosophy (MPhil)

The degree will normally be awarded for work on inter-faculty topics or where a student holds an undergraduate or honours degree other than in Science.

Admission

FM1 A person shall not be admitted as a candidate for the degree unless he or she

- (a) is the holder of an honours degree or four year equivalent of the University or of any other university recognised by Senate for the purpose; or
- (b) is a graduate of the University or of any other university recognised by Senate for the purpose who has shown by examination or publication or a record of appropriate training that he or she has reached the current level in the subject or discipline equivalent to an honours degree; or
- (c) has in any other manner attained a level of competence which in the opinion of Senate is adequate for the purpose of admission to the degree.

Master of Science (MSc)

Admission

- FM2 A person shall not be admitted as a candidate for the degree unless he or she is
- (a) an honours graduate in the Faculty of Science, or a graduate of another faculty or another university who holds a degree recognized by the Senate as being equivalent to an honours degree in the Faculty of Science; or
 - (b) a graduate of the University, or of any other institution recognised by the Senate for the purpose, who has shown by examination or publication or a record of appropriate training, that he or she has reached a level in the subject or cognate subject equivalent to an honours degree in Science.

Guidelines for applicants

Prospective candidates should contact the Head of the Department most closely concerned with their research interests, or the member of the academic staff of the department with whom they would like to do a project. The Dean (through the Head) is responsible for the acceptance of the candidate, and appointment or approval of the supervisor(s). The candidate may be required, after consultation with the prospective supervisor(s) to draw up a project proposal. This may then be inspected by a departmental board or panel appointed by the Head, before the candidacy is submitted for the approval of the Head and the Dean.

Subjects

- FM3.1 The degree may be conferred in any one of the following subjects:
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Applied Marine Science | Geochemistry |
| Applied Mathematics | Geology |
| Archaeology | Mathematical Statistics |
| Astronomy | Mathematics |
| Astrophysics & Space Science | Molecular & Cell Biology |
| Bioinformatics | Ocean & Atmosphere Science |
| Botany | Operational Research |
| Chemical Crystallography | Operational Research in Development |
| Chemistry | Physical Oceanography |
| Computer Science | Physics |
| Conservation Biology | Statistics |
| Disaster Risk Science (MPhil) | Theoretical Physics |
| Environmental & Geographical Science | Tertiary Chemistry Education |
| Environmental Management (MPhil) | Tertiary Physics Education |
| Information Technology (MPhil) | Zoology |

Award of the degree

- FM4.1 The degree of MSc/MPhil may be conferred
- (a) after acceptance by Faculty of a dissertation constituting a detailed report on a research project performed under the guidance of an approved supervisor (Masters by dissertation only); or

24 RULES FOR DEGREES / DEGREE PROGRAMMES

- (b) after a programme of advanced formal training and supervised research, for which a dissertation would be a partial requirement (Masters by coursework and dissertation).

FM4.2 Supplementary examinations are not awarded to candidates for the degree of MSc.

FM4.3 The degree may be awarded with distinction. In the case of an MSc by coursework and dissertation a distinction must be obtained in both components.

Registration and candidacy

FM5 Subject to the provisions of Rule FM7, a candidate for the degree shall register for not less than one academic year. Except by permission of Senate, full-time students are required to complete the requirements for the degree within two years. In exercising its discretion, Senate may take into account the nature of the research project undertaken.

Guidelines for candidates

After registration the candidate is expected to consult regularly with the supervisor(s). Prior to re-registration, both the candidate and the supervisor(s) are expected to present brief written progress reports to the Head of Department. These may be considered before the Head recommends re-registration for the degree. In appropriate cases, the supervisor(s) and Head may propose to Faculty that the candidate's registration be converted to a PhD. This should take place during the second year of MSc registration.

The dissertation

FM6.1 The dissertation shall demonstrate the successful completion of a programme of training in research methods, a thorough understanding of the scientific principles underlying the research project and an appropriate acquaintance with the relevant literature. It shall be clearly presented and conform to the standards laid down from time to time by the department and the Faculty.

FM6.2

- (a) The dissertation shall be accompanied by a written undertaking by the candidate, empowering the University to reproduce for the purpose of research the whole or any part of the dissertation.
- (b) A publication may not, without the prior permission of the Senate, contain a statement that the published material was, or is to be, submitted in fulfilment or part fulfilment of a Masters degree.

FM6.3 A candidate required to submit a dissertation shall

- (a) inform the Head of Department in writing of his or her intention to submit the dissertation for examination within two weeks of the intended submission date.
- (b) submit three copies (MSc by dissertation only) or two copies (MSc by coursework & dissertation) in temporary binding to the Dean by the third week in February for graduation in June or the third week in August for graduation in December. A further two unbound copies plus an electronic copy must be submitted once all necessary corrections and revisions to the dissertation have been made.

NOTE: (1) The letter of intention to submit should include the name of the supervisor(s) and the title of the dissertation. (2) Depending on the date of submission, certain fee rebates may apply. See Book 12, Student Fees, for details.

Guidelines for candidates

The dissertation will usually consist of a detailed report on the conduct of, and analysis of the results of, a research project performed under the close guidance of a suitably qualified supervisor or

supervisors. It is not essential for the Masters degree that the dissertation constitute a distinct contribution to knowledge in the subject, nor that the research project(s) undertaken necessarily be original. The degree is usually regarded as a training course to equip the candidate with the skills necessary either for employment in a given field, or for further, independent research for the degree of PhD in the same or related subject area. The course of training provided, and the research project(s) undertaken, will usually be less rigorous, and require less independent thought, than would study for a PhD.

Length of MSc dissertation

A Masters dissertation, submitted in fulfilment of the degree, should not exceed 50 000 words (appendices excluded).

Part-time programme

FM7 On the recommendation of the Head of Department, the Senate may permit a candidate who is unable to complete the programme within the minimum period, to complete the programme part time over a period of at least two years or more.

NOTE: No reduction in fees is made for part-time Masters degree students.

Recognition of attendance at another institution

FM8 The Senate may accept, in lieu of, part or all of the required periods of attendance, periods of attendance at other approved laboratories or institutions with facilities for the purpose of the proposed study, provided that supervision of the candidate by an approved officer of the University is assured.

Rules for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

(Rules for the PhD degree may be found in Book 3, General Rules for Students.)

Admission

The entrance requirement to the PhD is a Masters degree, but it is sometimes possible to upgrade to a PhD after completing the first year of Masters research.

The thesis

Where a candidate intends to submit his or her thesis for examination in the hope of the award of the degree at either the June or December graduation ceremonies, he or she must inform the Doctoral Degrees Board Office in writing of his or her intention to do so by not later than 9 January or 19 June respectively; the final dates for receipt of theses by the Doctoral Degrees Board Office are 16 February or 14 August. The University does not, however, undertake to reach a decision on the award of the degree by any specific date.

Length of the PhD thesis

The Senate has approved a recommendation from the Doctoral Degrees Board that a doctoral thesis should not exceed 80 000 words or 200 pages in length (this excludes appendices and illustrations). Any request to exceed the limit must be discussed with the supervisor and forwarded with the supervisor's comments to the Dean for consideration and possible approval.

Rules for the degree of Doctor of Science

FD1 The degree of Doctor of Science is a senior degree, and is awarded for substantial and original contributions to knowledge in a field of scientific endeavour. Such contribution will normally be the result of work carried out and published over a period of years, and will be such as to have established the candidate's position as an authority in the field(s)

26 RULES FOR DEGREES / DEGREE PROGRAMMES

in which he or she has worked. Candidates will ordinarily be senior scientists with a PhD, post-doctoral experience, and a track record of at least ten years as a leading researcher.

- FD2 A Candidate for the degree must be a graduate of:
- (a) the University (only in exceptional cases will candidates who do not have a PhD be considered); or
 - (b) a university recognised by the Senate for the purpose (only in exceptional cases will candidates who do not have a PhD be considered) who has or has had established research or teaching associations with the University.
- FD3 A candidate for the degree of Doctor of Science
- (a) must submit published work, which must constitute a substantial, original and important contribution to learning in some branch of science;
 - (b) may submit other published or unpublished work as collateral testimony of his or her fitness for the degree;
 - (c) must be registered for the degree for a minimum of two academic years and during the period of examination, whichever is the longer.
- FD4 (a) The examination will consist primarily of an assessment of the work submitted by the candidate, but a candidate shall, if required by Senate, present him/herself for an oral examination on the subject of the work presented.
- (b) No work will be accepted which has already been accepted by another university for the purpose of obtaining a degree.
- FD5 A candidate must submit three copies of all publications he or she wishes to be assessed for examination or as collateral testimony. If, at the date of its presentation, any portion of the work submitted has not been published, or is not being published, in a manner satisfactory to the University, the candidate must grant the University in writing a free licence to reproduce the work in whole or in part for the purpose of research. The University may waive the right so granted if the candidate subsequently makes arrangements for publication in a manner satisfactory to the University.

NOTES

1. *The DSc is the highest and most prestigious degree awarded in the Faculty of Science; it is of higher status than the Doctor of Philosophy (PhD) degree and is awarded very rarely. In these respects the DSc at UCT is based on the DSc tradition followed by many universities in the United Kingdom. (Some universities confer the DSc degree for a thesis on research done under supervision; such a DSc is the equivalent of a PhD. UCT does not.)*
2. *The DSc at UCT is awarded on the basis of published research work in a specific scientific field in which the supplicant has been active and productive for at least ten years.*
3. *Examiners for the DSc will be asked to consider whether the work submitted for the DSc to constitute a substantial, original and important contribution to learning in some branch of science in the sense that*
4.
 - (a) *it is likely to be regarded as 'benchmark' research in the relevant field now and in years to come, and*
 - (b) *it demonstrates that the candidate has achieved a leadership role (internationally) in that field of scientific research, and will be reminded that the emphasis in assessing the work of a DSc candidate must be on originality, substance and excellence.*

DEPARTMENTS IN THE FACULTY

DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY

The Department is housed in the Beattie Building, 5 University Avenue
 Telephone (021) 650-2353 Fax (021) 650-2352
 The Departmental abbreviation for Archaeology is AGE.

Professor and Head of Department (second semester):

J C Sealy, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Professor and Head of Department (first semester):

J E Parkington, MA PhD *Cantab*

Emeritus Professor:

N J van der Merwe, MA PhD *Yale*

Emeritus Associate Professor:

A B Smith, PhD *Berkeley*

Associate Professor:

R R Ackermann, MA *Arizona* PhD *Washington*

Senior Lecturer:

S L Hall, MA *Wits* DPhil *Stell*

Lecturers:

D R Braun, MA PhD *Rutgers*

S Chirikure, MA PhD *UCL*

R Sithaldeen, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* (CHED)

Principal Scientific Officer:

J L Lanham, BA (Hons) *Cape Town*

Scientific Officer:

L Hutten, BSc (Hons) MSc *Pretoria*

Laboratory Assistants:

D H Jacobs

Administrative Officer:

L J Cable

RESEARCH IN ARCHAEOLOGY

Research in Archaeology embraces a wide variety of topics, some of which are listed below. More detailed information can be obtained by writing to the Department of Archaeology. Some research programmes lie mainly in the areas of arts and humanities; others have closer affiliations with the natural sciences. Archaeological sites contain a rich record of the long-term history of peoples' interaction with the environment, and palaeoenvironmental research is one focus of activity within the department. Particular research interests include issues related to human evolution, the emergence of modern humans, and the history of hunter-gatherer, pastoralist and farming communities in southern Africa, as well as the archaeology of more recent colonial settlement.

The department houses and manages the University's light isotope mass spectrometers, and has a strong research programme in the area of light stable isotopes as environmental and dietary tracers. Short courses on the theory and practice of light isotope mass spectrometry are offered from time to time. The Archaeometry Laboratory is also equipped with a range of smaller items of equipment used in analytical studies of archaeological remains. Most, but not all, work in this area is focused on archaeological questions; other activities include surveys of selected modern environments to provide comparative data for studies of the past, and wildlife forensics.

There is also a laboratory for the study of archaeomaterials, with facilities for the preparation and study of metallographic and other specimens. Identification and interpretation of biological residues

from archaeological sites is routine, and the department houses comparative material for this purpose, including mammal, reptile and fish skeletons, marine mollusc shells, and botanical specimens. Larger reference collections are readily available in related University departments and allied institutions. Further information may be found in the Department's website at <http://www.uct.ac.za/depts/age>.

Undergraduate Courses

NOTE: Lectures are usually given four times a week, but the fifth day may also be used and should therefore be kept free.

First-Year Courses

AGE1002S AFRICA & WORLD ARCHAEOLOGY

NOTE: This semester course may not be taken by students who have obtained credit for AGE110S.

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor J C Sealy

Entrance requirements: None

Course outline:

An overview of the human past from the perspective of Africa. The course will provide an introduction to human origins and the origin of the archaeological record in Africa, the expansion of the human population from Africa, a comparative perspective on hunter-gatherers, the development of farming and the origins of complex societies, and the contact between Africa, Asia and Europe in the colonial period.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5

Tutorials: One tutorial/practical per week, Friday 5th period or as arranged.

DP requirements: Attendance and participation in tutorials, submission of written work.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

SAN1015F WORDS, DEEDS, BONES & THINGS

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr S Levine

Entrance requirements: None

Course outline:

How might one explain the beginnings of our species and diversity of human social, cultural and linguistic forms that have arisen as humans have developed into and now live as modern people? The course compares approaches taken by archaeologists, linguists and social-cultural anthropologists in their attempts to answer such questions. We delve into what lies behind the many ways people interact, communicate and use the material resources around them. Using examples from a wide variety of social, cultural, linguistic and ecological contexts, we address debates about the idea of human evolution, about the relation between nature and nurture and its links with concepts such as race, gender and kinship; and about the social-cultural underpinnings of language use and linguistic variations. A core theme is to understand and recognise the limitations of a cultural relativist approach. A core goal is to introduce students to critical academic skills that enable us to understand the bases on which new knowledge is developed and thereby to recognise how provisional knowledge is.

Lectures: Three lectures per week, times to be confirmed.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, time to be arranged.

DP requirements: Attendance at tutorials and submission of all written work, plus class test.

Assessment: Assignments and class tests count 50%; one 2-hour examination in June counts 50%.

GEO1009F INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES 1009

See course details under the Department of Geological Sciences.

AGE1003H FOUNDATIONS OF BIOLOGY, EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES

A course for students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS), providing a general introduction to the study of the earth and its living and non-living systems.

Course co-ordinator(s): Ms R Sithaldeen

Entrance requirements: This half course is taken by students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science, and is run over the whole year.

Course outline:

This introductory course in Earth System Science treats the earth as an integrated system, and seeks a deeper understanding of the physical, chemical, biological and human interactions which determine the past, current and future states of the earth. The course will provide the essential skills, including communication skills, necessary for students to continue in one or more of Biology, Earth and Environmental Sciences. Students will develop a basic understanding of the four primary Earth Systems (the earth, oceans, atmosphere and life), and how they affect, and interact with, one another. Particular focus will be the major effects and interactions of humans on our planet and its ecosystems. The aim is to provide a scientific understanding of the whole Earth System by describing how its component parts have evolved, how they function, and how they may be expected to continue to change in the future.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------

Lectures:	2	2	2	2	2
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week. Friday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests, practicals and tutorials) counts 50%; one 2-hour paper written in November counts 50%.

Second-Year Courses

AGE2011S HUMAN EVOLUTION

NOTE: This semester course may not be taken by students who have obtained credit for AGE3003S or AGE2002S.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor R R Ackermann

Entrance requirements: Any first-year Science course, or any one of AGE1003F or AGE1002S or any first-year Humanities course from a related discipline such as Social Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology, etc or by permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:

In AGE2011S we examine the record of primate and hominid evolution, showing how the traces of fossil skeletons and artefacts are interpreted in terms of human behaviour and evolutionary processes. We answer such questions as Why in Africa? Why a larger brain? Why bipedalism? Why make tools? and situate the study of human origins in its evolutionary context. The syllabus for AGE2011S includes practical sessions for the study of primate and human, fossil and recent skeletal material and the artefacts associated with early hominids.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------

Lectures:	2	2	2	2	
------------------	---	---	---	---	--

Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week at times to be arranged.

DP requirements: Attendance at practicals and completion of assignments.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 50%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 50%.

AGE2012F SOUTHERN AFRICAN HUNTERS & HERDERS

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor J E Parkington

Entrance requirements: Any first year Science course, or any one of AGE1003F or AGE1002S or any first-year Humanities course from a related discipline such as Social Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology, etc or by permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:

Humans have been hunter-gatherers for 99% of their evolutionary history, which means that our physical, psychological and social selves have been shaped by this way of life. Southern African Khoisan hunter-gatherers and herders have contributed significantly to our understanding of such societies. In this course, we focus on hunting and gathering as a way of life in Southern Africa from some 20 000 years ago to the twentieth century, concluding by considering the contemporary socio-political environment, in which many South Africans are (re-) connecting to a Khoisan identity. The course will include coverage of rock art and its significance, as well as other material culture, biology, linguistics and economic and environmental issues.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2

Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged.

DP requirements: Attendance at practicals, completion of assignments and participation in one-day field trip.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

Third-Year Courses

AGE3006H DIRECTED READING & RESEARCH

Entrance requirements: For students specialising in Archaeology, with permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:

A flexible intensive study course in a specific area customised to the needs of individual students.

Lectures: By arrangement

DP requirements: Completion of assignments.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 20%; a long paper counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 40%.

AGE3011F ROOTS OF BLACK IDENTITY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr S Chirikure

Entrance requirements: AGE2011S or AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:

In AGE3011F we explore the history of southern Africa's people over the past 2000 years. Why are southern African populations so diverse? What lies behind the linguistic map of modern South Africa? What are the links between human biology, culture and language? We use the archaeological record of artefacts, settlement systems, food waste, environmental contexts and human skeletons to look at population movement, assimilation, conflict, co-operation and domination. We explain the origins of current demographic patterns, problematise the notion of 'settler' and explore the rich and diverse heritage of the making of South Africa.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4

Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged.

DP requirements: Attendance at practicals and completion of assignments.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 50%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

AGE3012S GLOBAL INTERACTION & THE TRANSFORMATION OF SOUTH AFRICAN SOCIETY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr S L Hall

Entrance requirements: AGE2011S or AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:

Over the last thousand years, trade, population movements and exploratory settlement led to massive impacts on indigenous economies in southern Africa. In AGE3012S we look at these transformations from both foreign and local viewpoints. The archaeological record of Indian and Atlantic Ocean expansions record events of great significance and drama, including the process of colonization, slavery, genocide and eventually apartheid. Material culture, historic written records and excavated artefacts all inform our understanding of these events, many of them the major determinants of current conflicts and differences. We trace the history of interactions, the roots of inequalities and the course of differentiation through the archaeological record.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4

Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged.

DP requirements: Attendance at practicals and completion of assignments.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 50%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 50%.

AGE3013H ARCHAEOLOGY IN PRACTICE

NOTE: This course is a three and a half week residential field-school during the January/February vacation.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr D Braun

Entrance requirements: AGE2011S and AGE2012F, or both AGE2003F and AGE2002S, or by permission of the Head of Department.

Course outline:

The curriculum covers field training in site location, excavation, field note taking, stratigraphic observation, site survey, use of GPS and total station, photography, rock art recording, processing of field observations, spreadsheet use, preliminary conservation and accessioning of materials. The daily programme consists of lectures, followed by fieldwork and a short period of laboratory processing.

DP requirements: Attendance at field-school and completion of assignments.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 30%; projects count 20%; one 3-hour theory examination in November counts 25%; one 3-hour practical examination in November counts 25%.

Postgraduate Courses

AGE4000W BSc (HONS) IN ARCHAEOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor R R Ackermann

Entrance requirements: A BSc degree majoring in Archaeology and an acceptable academic record. Students applying for admission to the Honours programme in Archaeology must satisfy the Head of Department that they have adequate field work experience.

Course outline:

The purpose of the Honours programme in Archaeology is to look in depth at current issues in the discipline, both internationally and in southern Africa. Those taking part are expected to become fully involved in the academic life of the Department, attending such seminars as may be given by staff members, research students and visitors. In addition, they must participate in the structured programme of lectures and tutorials, and write a research dissertation. The dissertation is a central part of the Honours programme. Each student must prepare a project proposal, worked out with a supervisor and approved by the Head of Department. In addition, students must take part in one

32 DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY

open seminar, where they present their project to the Department. All students are required to attend a one-week field trip held during the year.

See also AGE4006W, Faculty of Humanities Handbook.

AGE4001W BSc (HONS) IN ARCHAEOLOGY & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor R R Ackermann

Entrance requirements: A BSc degree with majors in both Archaeology and Environmental & Geographical Science. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Course outline:

Using the resources of both the Departments of Archaeology and Environmental & Geographical Science, this honours programme focuses on the paleoenvironmental context in which humans lived during the long course of the Quaternary. Course requirements include modules from both Archaeology and from Environmental & Geographical Science and a research project and a dissertation.

AGE5000W MASTERS IN ARCHAEOLOGY

Candidates will be required to present a dissertation on an approved topic.

See also AGE5006W, Faculty of Humanities Handbook.

AGE6000W PhD IN ARCHAEOLOGY

Candidates will be required to present a thesis on an approved topic. Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules.

DEPARTMENT OF ASTRONOMY

The Department is housed in the 5th Floor RW James Building, 9 University Avenue
 Telephone (021) 650-5830 Fax (021) 650-3342; website <http://www.ast.uct.ac.za>
 The Departmental abbreviation for Astronomy is AST.

Professor and Head of Department:

R C Kraan-Korteweg, Diplom (MSc) *Basle* PhD Phil II *Basle*

Emeritus Professor:

B Warner, BSc (Hons) PhD DSc *London* MA DSc *Oxon* Assoc.RAS FRSSAF

Honorary Professors:

M W Feast, BSc (Hons) PhD *London* DSc (h.c) *Cape Town* ARCS DIC Assoc.RAS FRSSAF
 MASSAf

P A Charles, BSc (Hons) PhD *London* FRAS

South African Research Chair in Astrophysics and Space Science:

W J G de Blok, MSc PhD *Groningen*

Associate Professor:

P A Woudt, MSc *Groningen* PhD *Cape Town*

Senior Lecturer:

T Medupe BSc (Hons) MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Visiting Professor:

P A Whitelock, DIC *London* PhD *London* FRAS

Administrative Officer:

C Marsh

RESEARCH IN ASTRONOMY

The department makes use of the Southern African Large Telescope and other instruments at the South African Astronomical Observatory at Sutherland. Studies are carried out on galaxies (optical, NIR and radio), their dark matter content, large-scale structures, including those partially obscured by the foreground Milky Way (Professors Kraan-Korteweg, de Blok, Fairall and Associate Professor Woudt) and the Extra-Galactic distance scale (Professor Feast). Research also includes the theory and observation of variable stars, in particular, cataclysmic variable stars and degenerate variable stars (Professor Warner, Associate Professor Woudt and Dr Medupe), and observational and computational modeling of variable stars (Dr Medupe), Long Period Red Variables (eg. Miras), Cepheids and RR Lyrae Stars (Professor Feast). The history of astronomy in South Africa is also studied (Dr Medupe, Professor Warner).

Undergraduate Courses

First-Year Courses

AST1000F INTRODUCTION TO ASTRONOMY

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor P A Woudt

Entrance requirements: None

Course outline:

Our place in the Universe. Early beliefs and historical development of astronomical knowledge. Telescopes and instrumentation. The Earth-Sun-Moon system. Planets of the Solar System. Stars. Our galaxy and others. Relativity and cosmology. Life in the Universe.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: Six afternoon sessions are held in the Planetarium (of Iziko Museums of Cape Town) on Wednesday afternoons. They incorporate the "Starfinder" course. Optional observatory tours and

34 DEPARTMENT OF ASTRONOMY

observing evenings are also offered.

DP requirements: Satisfactory attendance at lectures and tutorials; class record of at least 35%.

Assessment: Class record 50%; one 2-hour final examination 50%; subminimum requirement of 40% of final examination.

Second-Year Courses

AST2002S ASTROPHYSICS

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor P A Woudt

Entrance requirements: PHY1004W or PHY1031F and PHY1032S (PHY1000W), MAM1000W.

Course outline:

Radiation Laws, Black Body radiation, Planck function. Wien's Law, Stefan-Boltzmann Law. Hydrogen spectroscopy, stellar spectroscopy. Relativistic Doppler effect. Stellar distances, magnitudes, radii and masses. HR diagram. Hydrostatic equilibrium, stellar and planetary structure. Nuclear energy, p-p cycle, CNO cycle, 3- \dot{A} . The sun. Stellar evolution. White dwarfs, neutron stars, black holes. Our galaxy, 21-cm radiation, radio mapping, interstellar matter. Galaxies, dark matter. Hubble Law, expansion of the Universe, primordial nucleosynthesis, 2.726 K background radiation, the Big Bang model. Radio, infra-red, ultra-violet, x-ray and gamma-ray-astronomy.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Wednesday, 14h00-16h30. One field trip to Sutherland

DP requirements: Satisfactory attendance at lectures and tutorials; class record of at least 35%

Assessment: Class record 50%; one 2-hour final examination 50%; subminimum requirement of 40% of final examination.

Third-Year Courses

AST3002F STELLAR ASTROPHYSICS

This course will not be offered if there are insufficient students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr T Medupe

Entrance requirements: AST2002S, PHY2014F, PHY2015S, PHY3021F as corequisite

Course outline:

Stellar atmospheres; radiative transfer and atomic processes; Boltzmann formula; Saha equation; scattering; theory of line formation; Doppler profile; Voigt profile; curve of growth; spectral analysis; physics of stellar interiors; stellar structure and evolution; hydrostatic equilibrium; thermal equilibrium; convective instability; theory of energy transport; energy generation; nuclear fusion; homologous stars; stellar birth, evolution and death; white dwarfs, neutron stars and black holes; supernovae; stellar pulsation.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week (14h00-16h30) by arrangement. One week observing trip.

DP requirements: Satisfactory attendance at lectures and tutorials; class record of at least 35%

Assessment: Class record 50%; one 2-hour final examination 50%; subminimum requirement of 40% of final examination.

AST3003S GALACTIC & EXTRAGALACTIC ASTROPHYSICS

This course will not be offered if there are insufficient students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor R C Kraan-Korteweg

Entrance requirements: AST2002S, PHY2014F, PHY2015S, PHY3021F as corequisite

Course outline:

Interstellar gas and dust; size shape and properties of dust grains; interstellar extinction and reddening; 21-cm radiation; molecular clouds; masers; radiative and collision processes in gaseous nebulae; galactic structure; differential galactic rotation; Oort equations; galaxy morphology; rotation curves; dark matter; spiral structure; large-scale distribution of galaxies; galaxy collisions; starbursts; active galaxies; radio galaxies, Seyfert galaxies, quasars; cosmology; scale of the universe; expansion of the universe; the Big Bang; primordial nucleosynthesis; cosmic background radiation.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week (14h00 to 16h30) by arrangement. One observing trip to Sutherland

Assessment: Class record 50%; one 2-hour final examination 50%; subminimum requirement of 40% of final examination.

DP requirements: Satisfactory attendance at lectures and tutorials; class record of at least 35%

Postgraduate Courses

AST4007W BSc (HONS) IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE (National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme)

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor P K S Dunsby

Entrance requirements: PHY3000W (PHY3021F and PHY3022S) or MAM3040W or equivalent. Candidates with an Engineering background will also be considered. Enrollments are limited to 20 students. Candidates must satisfy the Steering Committee that they have sufficient background in Mathematics. Admission is subject to the approval of the Steering Committee and an application must be made before 30th October of the preceding year. Late applications will also be considered.

Course outline:

The Honours course in Astrophysics and Space Science consists of courses presented by distinguished South African researchers from research institutions participating in NASSP. There is a theory component which includes courses in quantum mechanics and spectroscopy, classical electrodynamics, general relativity, general astrophysics, galaxies, computational physics, astrophysical fluid dynamics and computational methods, as well as an observational techniques component which includes optical and infrared astronomy and radio astronomy. In addition students will complete a project and go on a number of field trips to the national facilities.

Assessment: The assessment of the coursework is based on the class records and examinations for each of the modules. In general they are made up from tests, oral presentations, homework assignments, or projects. The research project will be evaluated based on a final report and an oral presentation.

AST5003F TAUGHT COMPONENT OF THE MASTERS IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE (National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme)

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor P K S Dunsby

Entrance requirements: This programme is open to Honours graduates in Astronomy and Space Science (AST4007W), Physics (PHY4000W, PHY4001W, PHY4002W) or equivalent, and Engineering. Entrance is subject to a minimum pass mark of 60% in the Honours degree.

36 DEPARTMENT OF ASTRONOMY

Course outline:

A selection of advanced topics presented by distinguished South African researchers from research institutions participating in NASSP. The courses vary from year to year but usually include cataclysmic variables, extragalactic astronomy, space technology, hot topics in cosmology, advanced general relativity, high energy astrophysics, observational cosmology, geomagnetism and aeronomy, plasma physics and magnetohydrodynamics.

AST5001W DISSERTATION COMPONENT OF THE MASTERS IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE

Entrance requirements: AST5003F

Dissertation: Students will work on an approved research topic on which a dissertation must be presented.

AST5000W MASTERS IN ASTRONOMY

The normal route to an MSc in Astronomy is via AST5003F and AST5001W as above. However, in certain circumstances, the Head of Department may recommend an MSc by research work and the writing of a dissertation only. General Rules for this degree may be found at the front of the handbook.

AST6000W PhD IN ASTRONOMY

Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies. Supervision of research work towards this degree is provided by the Department.

DEPARTMENT OF BOTANY

The Department is housed in the H W Pearson Botany Building, 8 University Avenue.

Telephone (021) 650-2447 Fax (021) 650-4041.

The Departmental abbreviation for Botany is BOT. Courses jointly offered with the Zoology Department are designated BIO.

Professor and Head of Department:

J J Midgley, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Emeritus Honorary Professor:

B J Huntley, BSc *Natal* MSc *Pretoria*

Honorary Professors:

R M Cowling, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

H P Linder, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Harry Bolus Professor of Botany:

W J Bond, BSc (Hons) *Exeter* MSc *Cape Town* PhD *UCLA*

Leslie Hill Professor of Plant Conservation:

M T Hoffman, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

H W Pearson Honorary Professor of Botany:

J S Donaldson MSc *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

Professors:

J J Bolton, BSc (Hons) PhD *Liverpool*

T A Hedderson, MSc *Memorial* PhD *Reading*

Associate Professor:

M D Cramer, MSc *Wits* PhD *Cape Town*

Senior Lecturers:

E C February, BA (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

A M Muasya, MPhil *Moi* PhD *Reading*

G A Verboom, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Lecturer:

S B M Chimphango, MSc *Malawi* PhD *Cape Town*

T G Mandiwana-Neudani, BSc (Hons) *Venda* MSc *Cape Town*

Honorary Research Associates:

R J Anderson, BSc (Hons) *Wits* PhD *Cape Town*

E J Moll, BSc (Hons) PhD *Natal*

Principal Technical Officer:

G A Aguilar, MSc *Chile*

Senior Scientific Officer:

D Hattas, B Tech (*Cape Tech*) MSc *UWC*

Technical Officer:

D I Barnes

Administrative Officer:

S Smuts

Senior Secretary:

N Allies

Departmental Assistants:

N Davids

R Jacobs

Z Jikumlambo

BOLUS HERBARIUM

Director:

J J Midgley, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

38 DEPARTMENT OF BOTANY

Honorary Research Associates:

P V Bruyns, MA DPhil *Oxon* RSM MSc *Cape Town*

S Hammer

G Williamson, BDS MSc *Wits*

Keeper:

T A Hedderson, MSc *Memorial* PhD *Reading*

Curator/Chief Technical Officer:

T H Trinder-Smith, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town*

Scientific Officer (part-time):

C Klak, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Librarian:

C P Kotze, BA *Unisa* PTD III *Dept Ed* PG Dip LIS *Cape Town*

Departmental Assistant:

C J Christians

PLANT CONSERVATION UNIT

Director:

M T Hoffman, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Honorary Research Associate:

A E Ellis, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *UC Irvine*

Deputy Director:

L Gillson, BA *Oxon* MSc *Imperial* DPhil *Oxon*

Administrative Assistant:

M Sauls

SEAWEED RESEARCH UNIT

MARINE & COASTAL MANAGEMENT (DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENT AFFAIRS)

Head:

R J Anderson, BSc (Hons) *Wits* PhD *Cape Town*

Oceanographic Researcher:

M D Rothman, BSc (Hons) *UWC* MSc *Cape Town*

Principal Oceanographic Research Assistants:

C J T Boothroyd

F A Kemp

RESEARCH IN BOTANY

The mission of the Department is to conduct high quality teaching and research in the physiology, ecology, evolution, systematics and conservation of terrestrial and aquatic plants. The courses offered in the Department have been designed to train students in basic and applied botany, as well as to play a leading role in the teaching of ecology, biodiversity and evolutionary biology.

Botanical research includes population, community and reproductive ecology (Professors W J Bond, J J Bolton, T A Hedderson and J J Midgley), ecophysiology (Dr S B M Chimphango, Associate Professor M D Cramer, Dr E C February), floristics, biogeography, ecology and economics of marine algae (Professor J J Bolton), angiosperm biosystematics (Drs A M Muasya and G A Verboom), plant molecular systematics, bryophyte evolution and ecology (Professor T A Hedderson and Ms T G Mandiwana-Neudani) as well as palaeoecology (Dr E C February). The Bolus Herbarium undertakes plant taxonomic research with an emphasis on the flora of the Cape Peninsula. In addition the Botany Department houses the Plant Conservation Unit which is involved in research on biological diversity and restoration ecology as well as dryland degradation and environmental history (Professor M T Hoffman and Dr L Gillson). The Department is also home to the Seaweed Research Unit of Marine and Coastal Management, under the direction of Dr R J Anderson, which conducts research into the biology of economic seaweed resources.

Undergraduate Courses

DP Requirements: In all undergraduate courses the class record comprises marks from essays, tests and practical write-ups (as well as seminars and projects in some senior courses).

First-Year Courses

BIO1000F CELL BIOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr S B M Chiphango

Entrance requirements: None, but admission will be restricted to students who have passed either Physical Science or Life Sciences/Biology at NSC level 4 or Senior Certificate.

Course outline:

Basic biological principles and processes at a cellular level provide an essential grounding for future study in the life sciences. Chemistry concepts necessary for understanding biological processes are introduced, as well as the structure and function of cell components. Cellular respiration and the energetic relationships of photosynthesis, and cellular processes associated with nitrogen assimilation, follow. Sections dealing with genetics and cell division provide an introduction to molecular biology.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, by arrangement.

Practicals: One afternoon per week. Monday or Tuesday or Wednesday or Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Attendance at 70% of the practicals and a minimum of 35% for the class record.

Assessment: Class record counts 45% (three class tests of 9% each and a practical book mark of 18%); one practical paper counts 15%; one 2-hour examination paper written in June counts 40%.

BIO1004S BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

For course details see entry under Department of Zoology.

AGE1003H FOUNDATIONS OF BIOLOGY, EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES

A course for students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS), providing a general introduction to the study of the Earth and its living and non-living systems. For course details see entry under Department of Archaeology.

Second-Year Courses

BIO2003S ECOPHYSIOLOGY: HOW PLANTS & ANIMALS WORK

BIO2004F PRINCIPLES OF ECOLOGY

For course details see entry under the Department of Zoology.

BIO2006F MARINE & TERRESTRIAL PLANT DIVERSITY

Course co-ordinator(s): Ms T G Mandiwana-Neudani

Entrance requirements: BIO1000F, BIO1004S

Course outline:

Plants have diversified into every habitable environment on earth, and form the trophic platform on which almost all life is based. This course provides an introduction to the diversity and evolution of marine and terrestrial plants, from their distant origins to the present-day. The structure and evolution of the major groups of seaweeds and phytoplankton is considered in relation to the evolution of similar form in unrelated groups, driven by adaptation to aspects of the aquatic

40 DEPARTMENT OF BOTANY

environment. Similarly, the evolution of land plants, from mosses to orchids, is considered in the light of a terrestrial existence. The emphasis here is on structural adaptations that enhance survival and reproduction in dry environments, and their consequences. Key objectives of the course include: (i) to familiarise students with the major groups of plants and their evolutionary relationships; (ii) to highlight the characteristics that distinguish the major plant groups; and (iii) to develop an understanding of the evolutionary forces that have shaped the modern world flora. Examples from the Cape flora and emphasized throughout, and students will learn to recognise and distinguish the major families that make up this flora.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00, and a compulsory field excursion.

DP requirements: Minimum of 40% for class record

Assessment: Essays, tests and a small project count 50%; two 2-hour examinations in June each count 25%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

BIO2008S PRINCIPLES OF EVOLUTION

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor W J Bond

Entrance requirements: BIO1000F, BIO1004S.

Course outline:

This course focuses on processes underlying genetic and functional trait variation in both plants and animals. It includes a brief introduction to phylogeny and its use in evolutionary studies. Patterns in plant and animal life histories and behaviour are introduced. The evolution of sex, why organisms die and the diversity of mating systems are discussed using both plant and animal examples. The course also introduces the ecology and evolution of plant-animal interactions, including pollination, dispersal and herbivory. Applications of the subject matter in conservation biology and resource use are included where appropriate.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00, and a compulsory field excursion.

DP requirements: Minimum of 40% for class record

Assessment: Class mark counts 50%; one 2-hour theory paper and one 2-hour practical examination written in November each count 25%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

Third-Year Courses

BIO3005S MOLECULAR ECOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor T A Hedderson

Entrance requirements: BIO3010F or MCB3019F

Course outline:

The emerging field of Molecular Ecology employs cutting edge techniques to address evolutionary and ecological questions of critical importance to conservation biology, behavioural ecology, biodiversity distribution and forensic science. This course demonstrates how molecular data is revolutionizing evolutionary biology, and providing new insights into past population size, migration rates, and population connectivity. Throughout, there is a strong emphasis on the application of molecular techniques, for example in forensics (e.g. using DNA fingerprinting to identify rare stolen plants) and conservation biology (e.g. using knowledge of past distributions to plan reserve networks with future climate change in mind). Students will gain hands-on experience of how current gene distributions can be used to model evolution from a common ancestor, using knowledge of generation time, population size and mutation rate.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	2	2	2	2	2
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, to be advised**Practicals:** Two practicals per week, Tuesday and Thursday, 14h00-17h00**DP requirements:** Minimum of 40% for class record**Assessment:** Tests count for 30%; practicals and tutorials count for 20%; two 2-hour examinations in November counts for 25% each. A subminimum of 40% is required.**BIO3006F ECOSYSTEM ECOLOGY***This course is a residential two week field course occurring before term starts. During term time further lectures and various assignments need to be completed.***Course co-ordinator(s):** Professor J J Midgley**Entrance requirements:** BIO1000F and any two of BIO2006F (BOT2006F), BIO2008F (BIO2007S) BIO2004F (ZOO2000F), BIO2005S (ZOO2001S), BIO2002S (ZOO2002S), EGS2013F (EGS2010F/EGS2012S)**Course outline:**

This course concentrates on the factors which determine the form and function of ecosystems, with mainly terrestrial African examples (forests, savannas, arid-lands and fynbos). The course features distinctive aspects of African ecology such as the incredible plant diversity of Cape fynbos and succulent Karoo, the role of large herbivorous mammals, the importance of fire and the long presence of people. The course is field-work orientated and provides computer skills. It should appeal to students interested in ecosystem dynamics/modelling, systems ecology, plant-animal interactions, conservation and management.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	3	3	3	3	3
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Tutorials: By arrangement.**Practicals:** By arrangement.**DP requirements:** Minimum of 40% for class record**Assessment:** Project, essays and tests count 50%; one 2-hour theory examination and one 2-hour practical examination written in March/April each count 25%. A subminimum of 40% is required.**BIO3010F SYSTEMATICS & MACRO EVOLUTION****Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr A M Muasya**Entrance requirements:** BIO2007S or MCB2018F**Course outline:**

This course deals with the description and analysis of biodiversity and evolution at the species level and above. The course begins by considering the nature and definition of "species," the processes by which new species arise in nature (speciation), and the data and procedures employed in the practical discovery, naming and description of previously-undescribed species. Thereafter, the focus shifts to the inference of phylogenetic (evolutionary) relationships amongst species, with an emphasis on the data (morphological, molecular) and analytical methods (parsimony, likelihood, Bayesian) employed in phylogeny reconstruction. Following on from this, the utility of phylogenetic data in the study of macroevolution is explored, specifically in relation to the study of adaptation, key innovation, evolutionary radiation and molecular dating. We also introduce several key biodiversity initiatives including the Tree of Life Project and The Consortium for the Barcode of Life.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	2	2	2	2	2
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

42 DEPARTMENT OF BOTANY

Tutorials: To be arranged

Practicals: Tuesdays and Thursdays, 14h00 to 17h00, and a compulsory weekend excursion

DP requirements: Minimum of 40% for class record.

Assessment: Tests count 30%; practicals and tutorials count 20%; two 2-hour written examinations in June counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

BIO3011S GLOBAL CHANGE ECOLOGY

NOTE: Replaces BIO3007S: ECOSYSTEM PHYSIOLOGY: FROM THE LEAF TO THE GLOBE.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor M D Cramer

Entrance requirements: BIO1000F, BIO1004S, BIO2003S recommended

Course outline:

How is the planet affected by the drivers of global environmental change? This course begins with a brief overview of key drivers of global environmental change, including greenhouse gas emissions, nitrogen deposition and pollution, and land-use change. It then examines how these drivers influence (and are influenced by) primary productivity, nutrient cycling, water relations and vegetation-climate feedbacks. The course provides an integrated knowledge to contemporary environmental issues like carbon sequestration, climate change mitigation, and dynamic global vegetation models (DGVMs) and managing global water, marine and terrestrial ecosystems.

Period

Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4
-----------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: Two practicals per week, Wednesday and Friday, 14h00-17h00 and a compulsory field excursion.

DP requirements: Minimum of 40% for class record

Assessment: Practical, tests and projects count 50%; two 2-hour examinations in November count 25% each. A subminimum of 40% is required.

Postgraduate Courses

BOT4000W BSc (HONS) IN BOTANY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr E February

Entrance requirements: A BSc degree with specialisation in Botany, Ecology or Biodiversity and Evolutionary Biology, or at the discretion of the Head of Department. Enrolments are limited to 20, and acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of final year results, material covered in the undergraduate curriculum, and possibly also referee reports.

Course outline:

The Honours course is designed to enrich the student's appreciation of theory through advanced coursework, essay writing, seminars, discussion groups and compulsory field work. Students will also be expected to conduct research projects. Two options must be selected from the following topics: Ecology, Phycology, Ecophysiology, Systematics.

Assessment: Compulsory introductory modules count 6%, coursework essays and assignments (4) 19%, coursework seminars (2) 10%, Examinations (3) 20%, projects (2) 40% and project seminar (1) 5%.

BOT5000W MASTERS IN BOTANY

General rules for this degree may be found at the front of the handbook.

BOT6000W PhD IN BOTANY

Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

The Department is housed in the P D Hahn Building, 28 Chemistry Road
Telephone (021) 650-2446 Fax (021) 689-7499
The Departmental abbreviation for Chemistry is CEM.

Professor and Head of Department:

A L Rodgers, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Emeritus Professors:

J R Bull, MSc *Natal* DPhil *Oxon* CChem FRSC FRSSAf Hon MSACI

P W Linder, MSc *Natal* PhD *Cantab* CChem MRSC MSACI

J R Moss, BSc (Hons) PhD *Leeds* CChem FRSC MSACI

L R Nassimbeni, MSc *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town* CChem FRSC FRSSAf MSACI

A M Stephen, MSc PhD *Cape Town* DPhil *Oxon* CChem MRSC MSACI

Mally Professor of Organic Chemistry:

R Hunter, BSc (Hons) PhD *London* DIC

Jamison Professor of Inorganic Chemistry:

Professor of Physical Chemistry:

South African Research Chair in Drug Discovery:

K Chibale, BScEd *Zambia* PhD *Cantab*

South African Research Chair in Scientific Computing:

K J Naidoo, MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Michigan*

Honorary Research Associates:

S Churms, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

R J Haines, MSc *Natal* PhD *London* FRSSAf

E M Timme, BSc (Hons) *Wits* PhD *Cape Town*

Professors:

S A Bourne, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* CChem MRSC MSACI

M R Cairn, MSc PhD *Cape Town* Dr Hon Causa Univ Med Pharm 'Iuliu Hatieganu' *Romania*

T J Egan, BSc (Hons) PhD *Wits* MSACI

G E Jackson, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* CChem FRSC MSACI

Associate Professors:

B Davidowitz, MSc PhD *Cape Town* MSACI

D W Gammon, BSc (Hons) PhD HDE *Cape Town* MSACI

A T Hutton, MSc PhD *Cape Town* CChem MRSC MSACI

N Ravenscroft, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* MSACI

Senior Lecturers:

M A Jardine, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

S Wilson, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Lecturer:

G S Smith, BSc *Natal* BSc (Hons) MSc PhD *UWC* MSACI

Contract Lecturers:

S S Botha, MSc PhD *UWC*

C L Oliver, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

G A Venter, MSc PhD *Stell* MSACI

Senior Research Scholar:

L R Nassimbeni, MSc *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town* CChem FRSC FRSSAf MSACI

Chief Scientific Officers:

D Jappie, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* MSACI

C Lawrence, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town*

E Murray, BSc Med (Hons) *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

44 DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

Senior Scientific Officers:

A Gamieldien, BSc (Hons) HDE *UWC*

W W Mavuso, BSc (Hons) *Sunderland PhD Cape Town*

Principal Technical Officers:

K Achleitner

A de Jager

Chief Technical Officers:

A D Joseph

G Hesselink

Senior Technical Officers:

G Benincasa, BSc (Hons) *Natal*

N W Hendricks

P Roberts

Technical Officer:

K Willis

Assistant Technical Officer:

M McLean, N Dipl Anal Chem *CPUT*

Administrative Officer:

G Burke, BA *Unisa* BA (Hons) MA *Cape Town*

Administrative Assistant:

D C Brooks

Senior Secretaries:

L M Bezuidenhout

S D Naicker

P Smit

Departmental Assistants:

S Y Dyule-Nozewu

Y Ely

A F Hendricks

W A Hendricks

A M Khoapa

M Mentor

G M Mlungu

K M Sigam

C M Stanley

RESEARCH IN CHEMISTRY

The Department of Chemistry is equipped for many and varied research activities. In addition to a microanalytical service, gas-liquid chromatography, high-speed liquid chromatography and other routine facilities, major items of modern physical equipment include NMR (Varian VXR 200, Mercury 300 multi-nuclear and solid-state spectrometers) and atomic absorption spectrometers (flame and graphite furnace), an inductively-coupled plasma spectrometer, mid-IR spectrophotometers, UV-visible spectrophotometers, X-ray generators and single-crystal diffractometers (four-circle and CCD detector) for crystallographic studies, a spectropolarimeter, and workstations for both thermal and electrochemical analysis. The Department is also fortunate in having the opportunity of utilising facilities in other departments within the University. In terms of computing the Department has several research and teaching microlabs, several workstations for molecular modelling, Sun workstations for the processing of NMR data, and full access to the local area network.

In its Strategic Plan the Department has affirmed the central importance of the sub-disciplines of Inorganic, Organic and Physical Chemistry, and their applications in synthesis and analysis. These three themes constitute the essential pillars of the discipline of Chemistry. The Department wishes to consolidate and strengthen four main focus areas for its research activities:

Synthetic and medicinal chemistry - the discovery, design, synthesis and activity of bio-active molecules (M R Cairn, K Chibale, T J Egan, D W Gammon, R Hunter, G E Jackson, M A Jardine, N Ravenscroft).

Supramolecular chemistry - the application of X-ray diffraction and other physical methods to the understanding of inclusion phenomena and other molecular associations (S A Bourne, M R Cairn, L R Nassimbeni, C L Oliver).

Transition metal chemistry - the discovery, design, synthesis and properties of new coordination and organometallic compounds of the transition metals with potential applications as materials or catalysts (S S Botha, A T Hutton, J R Moss, G S Smith).

Biophysical and structural chemistry - the application of spectroscopic, diffraction and computational methods to the understanding of molecular and macromolecular phenomena (T J Egan, G E Jackson, K J Naidoo, N Ravenscroft, A L Rodgers, G A Venter).

In addition, research is also carried out on aspects of *chemistry education* - curriculum design, writing and communication within the discipline (B Davidowitz).

Further information may be found on the Department's website at <http://www.uct.ac.za/depts/cem>

Undergraduate Courses

DP Requirements:

All undergraduate Chemistry courses have the following DP requirements: Attendance and completion of all practicals, tests and tutorial exercises, and attainment of at least 35% (first-year courses) or 50% (senior courses) for the class record.

Supplementary examinations:

For all undergraduate Chemistry courses, borderline candidates may not necessarily be awarded a supplementary examination to be written in January/February of the following year. As an alternative, the Department reserves the right to apply rule G19.6 which implies that a further test, which may be oral or written, may take place before the date of the Faculty Examinations Committee. Students are accordingly warned that they may be expected to make themselves available for such further testing.

Textbooks:

The lecturers in charge of each course will advise students at the commencement of the course on the textbooks required and recommended.

First-Year Courses

CEM1000W is the first-year full qualifying course for entrance to second-year courses in the Faculty of Science and in Chemical Engineering in the Faculty of Engineering and the Built Environment. CEM1009H and CEM1010F are half courses taken by students who are admitted to the General Entry for Programmes in Science or the Engineering Foundation Programme, and completion of both courses is equivalent to the full course CEM1000W. The Department also offers CEM1008F: Chemistry for Engineers, CEM1012S: Chemistry for Physiotherapy students and CEM1011F: Chemistry for Medical Students, which is repeated as CEMO011S and CEM1011X as part of the Faculty of Health Sciences Intervention Programme. Details of these courses can be found in the relevant faculty student handbooks.

The practical courses are designed to test and apply the principles discussed in the lectures, and include titrimetric analysis, introductory instrumental techniques and the preparation and reactions of organic compounds.

CEM1000W CHEMISTRY 1000

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr G S Smith

Entrance requirements: Students wishing to register for CEM1000W will normally be expected to have passed Physical Science at least at NSC level 4 (or senior certificate HG E/SG C).

46 DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

Course outline:

Microscopic and macroscopic concepts, atomic structure, chemical bonding and molecular structure, chemistry of the elements and inorganic chemistry, chemical equilibrium, acids and bases, solubility products, chemical analysis, phases of matter, thermodynamics and thermochemistry, colligative properties, oxidation and reduction, electrochemistry, chemical kinetics and radiochemistry. Introduction to structure and reactivity in organic chemistry and the language of organic chemistry; describing and predicting organic reactivity; introduction to the structure, properties and reactivity of biologically important molecules.

Lectures: Four lectures per week, Monday to Wednesday and Friday, 2nd or 4th period.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday, 2nd or 4th period.

Practicals: One practical per week, Tuesday, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests and practicals) counts 40%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 60%. It is necessary to pass the theory examination and the whole course in order to secure an overall pass.

CEM1009H CHEMISTRY 1009

This half course is taken by students who are admitted to the General Entry for Programmes in Science and is run over the whole year. Students who pass CEM1009H can register for CEM1010F during the following academic year. The half courses CEM1009H and CEM1010F together are equivalent to the first-year full course CEM1000W.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor B Davidowitz

Course outline:

Microscopic and macroscopic worlds, gases, atomic structure, chemical bonding and molecular structure, introduction to acids and bases, solutions, thermochemistry, kinetics, chemical equilibrium, acid-base equilibria, introduction to the language of organic chemistry, functional groups and isomers in organic chemistry.

Period

Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	4	4	4	
------------------	---	---	---	--

Tutorials: Two tutorials per week, Monday and Tuesday, 4th period.

Practicals: One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests and practicals) counts 50%; one 2-hour paper written in November counts 50%. It is necessary to pass the theory examination and the whole course in order to secure an overall pass.

CEM1010F CHEMISTRY 1010

This half course is taken by students who have completed CEM1009H during the previous academic year and is offered in the first semester. The half courses CEM1009H and CEM1010F together are equivalent to the first-year full course CEM1000W.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor A T Hutton

Entrance requirements: CEM1009H

Course outline:

Volumetric analysis, chemical bonding, the solid state, liquids, colligative properties of solutions, acid-base equilibria, solubility products, chemical kinetics, oxidation and reduction, electrochemistry, introductory thermodynamics, describing and predicting organic reactivity, introduction to the structure, properties and reactivity of biologically important molecules.

Period

Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, by arrangement.

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests, tutorials and practicals) counts 50%; one 2-hour paper written in June counts 50%. It is necessary to pass the theory examination and the whole course in order to secure an overall pass.

Second-Year Courses

CEM2007F and CEM2008S are required courses for students proceeding to a specialisation field in Chemistry. CEM2013S is an elective course which may also be taken by non-chemistry majors.

CEM2007F PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY & SPECTROSCOPY

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor S A Bourne

Entrance requirements: CEM1000W (or equivalent), 1000-level full course in Physics, 1000-level full or semester course in Mathematics; concurrent registration for MAM2052F is highly recommended.

Course outline:

Introduction to spectroscopy, molecular spectroscopy, thermodynamics, phase equilibria, electrochemistry, kinetics, solid-state chemistry. The practical course covers the lectured material.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, by arrangement

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests and practicals) counts 50%; one 2-hour paper written in June counts 50%. It is necessary to pass the theory examination and the whole course in order to secure an overall pass.

CEM2008S ORGANIC & INORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr M A Jardine

Entrance requirements: CEM1000W (or equivalent), 1000-level full course in Physics, 1000-level full or semester course in Mathematics. Completion of CEM2007F is strongly recommended.

Course outline:

Main-group chemistry and trends in the Periodic Table, chemistry of the transition metals and coordination chemistry, structure elucidation of organic molecules, organic reactivity, reaction mechanisms and stereochemistry, elimination reactions and carbonyl group reactivity, substitution and addition reactions, chemical biology. The practical course covers the lectured material.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, by arrangement.

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests and practicals) counts 50%; one 2-hour paper written in November counts 50%. It is necessary to pass the theory examination and the whole course in order to secure an overall pass.

CEM2013S CHEMISTRY IN HEALTH & DISEASE

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor G E Jackson

Entrance requirements: CEM1000W (or equivalent); MCB2014F is highly recommended.

Course outline:

Introduction to chemistry in health and disease; molecular structure of drugs and drug targets; physicochemical issues in drug design and development; chemical perspectives on African diseases (chemistry of vaccine development, role of chemistry in the understanding and treatment of

48 DEPARTMENT OF CHEMISTRY

HIV/AIDS, chemical insights into malaria); bioinorganic chemistry - metals in living systems and as therapeutic agents; biomineralization - role in crystal deposition disease.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests, assignments and practicals) counts 50%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. It is necessary to pass the theory examination and the whole course in order to secure an overall pass.

Third-Year Courses

CEM3005W is the required course for students proceeding to a specialisation in Chemistry.

The Department also offers CEM3004Z: Physical Chemistry Laboratory, which may be taken by students in Chemical Engineering. Details may be found in the student handbook of the Faculty of Engineering and the Built Environment.

CEM3005W CHEMISTRY 3005

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor M R Caira

Entrance requirements: CEM2007F and CEM2008S, 1000-level full course in Mathematics; completion of or concurrent registration for MAM2052F is highly recommended.

Course outline:

Wave mechanics and spectroscopy, adsorption and heterogeneous catalysis, X-ray crystallography, dynamics, inorganic reaction mechanisms, organometallic chemistry, organic structure and reactivity, organic synthesis, organic dynamic stereochemistry. The practical course covers the lectured material.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: Two practicals per week, Wednesday and Friday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Class record (comprising tests, writing project and practicals) counts 40%; one oral examination in November counts 10% and two 3-hour papers written in November count 50% towards the final mark. It is necessary to pass the theory examination and the whole course to secure an overall pass.

Postgraduate Courses

CEM4000W BSc (HONS) IN CHEMISTRY

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor T J Egan

Entrance requirements: A BSc degree (or equivalent) with a specialisation in Chemistry at a sufficiently high standard to satisfy the Head of Department. Entrance to the Honours course is competitive and applications are considered individually, taking into consideration the entire academic record. Priority will be given to UCT graduates, who require 60% or higher in CEM3005W as the normal minimum prerequisite for admission. Applicants from other universities must satisfy the Honours steering committee that they have covered the same topics at the equivalent level.

Note: Entrance is limited to 16 students.

Course outline:

The programme starts at the beginning of February with a four-week course on *modern instrumental methods and group theory*, providing a strong grounding in key instrumental techniques that are extensively used in modern chemistry. It includes theory lectures and hands-on practical work in NMR spectroscopy, X-ray methods of analysis, separation methods, modern electrochemical

methods, and group theory.

This is followed by the *core lecture course*, providing the basic conceptual tools in inorganic, organic and physical chemistry. It is tested by written examination in June and comprises 40 lectures in each of inorganic chemistry (aqueous coordination chemistry, organometallic chemistry, bioinorganic chemistry and catalysis), organic chemistry (organic synthesis in action, the third dimension in organic reactions, asymmetric synthesis and advanced reagents in organic synthesis) and physical chemistry (statistical thermodynamics, quantum chemistry, solid state chemistry and liquids).

This leads to the *research project*, lasting from August to November, in which each student chooses a research project of personal interest. This project counts 41% of the final Honours mark. There is a two-week period to prepare and present a full research proposal, and then ten weeks of full-time research work in the laboratory of an academic member of staff, culminating in the presentation of a short dissertation and an oral presentation to the Department. Training in oral communication is also carried out in the second semester.

Lectures: By arrangement. Lectures, tutorials and practicals start at the beginning of February. Lectures and tutorials are daily in the first three periods and at other times arranged. Practical work and other activities occupy three afternoons per week during the first semester and all day all week during the second semester.

Assessment: To pass the Honours course candidates must obtain an overall average of 50%, an average of 45% for the Core Course written examinations and one third of the marks available on each individual paper of the Core Course examinations. In addition, candidates must attain at least 50% for the Research Project, complete the Modern Instrumental Methods and Group Theory module, all practical work, tutorial assignments, generic skills course and any other compulsory activities.

CEM5000W MASTERS IN CHEMISTRY

Candidates must submit a dissertation on an approved research topic. General rules for this degree may be found at the front of the handbook.

CEM5004W MASTERS IN TERTIARY CHEMISTRY EDUCATION

Candidates must submit a dissertation on an approved research topic. General rules for this degree may be found at the front of the handbook.

CEM6000W PhD IN CHEMISTRY

Candidates for the PhD degree must submit a thesis on an approved research topic, and are referred to Book 3, General Rules and Policies, in which the rules for the degree are set out.

CEM6001W PhD IN TERTIARY CHEMISTRY EDUCATION

Candidates for the PhD degree must submit a thesis on an approved research topic, and are referred to Book 3, General Rules and Policies, in which the rules for the degree are set out.

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

The Department is housed in the Computer Science Building, 18 University Avenue.
Telephone (021) 650-2663 Fax (021) 689-9465.
The Departmental abbreviation for Computer Science is CSC.

Professor and Head of Department:

K J MacGregor, BSc *Strathclyde* MSc *Glasgow*

Professors:

E H Blake, BSc (Hons) *Wits* PhD *London*

P S Kritzing, MSc (Eng) *Wits* PhD *Waterloo*

Associate Professors:

S Berman, BSc *Rhodes* MSc PhD *Cape Town*

G Marsden, BSc (Hons) PhD *Stirling*

Adjunct Professor:

A C M Hutchison, MSc HDE (PG) *Sec Cape Town* PhD *Zurich*

Senior Lecturers:

A Bagula, MEng *UCL* MSc *Stell* PhD *KTH*

J E Gain, MSc *Rhodes* PhD *Cantab*

M Kuttel, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

H Le, BA BSc *Hanoi* PhD *UTS*

P C Marais, MSc *Cape Town* DPhil *Oxon*

A Mbogho, MS PhD *City Univ of New York*

H Suleman, MSc *UDW* PhD *Virginia Tech*

Lecturer:

G Stewart BSc (Hons) *Cape Town*

Computer System Managers:

A Adekayode

C Balfour, BSocSci *Cape Town* BA (SS) Hons *UNISA*

Administrative Assistants:

E M Gill

S Valley

Senior Secretary:

J Wright

Departmental Assistant:

B J Sam

RESEARCH IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

Research in the Department is organised into well-equipped laboratories funded by international, governmental and industrial sponsors. More information can be obtained by writing to the department or on the Departmental Web pages.

ADVANCED INFORMATION MANAGEMENT (Co-ordinator: Associate Professor S Berman).

This laboratory deals with multiple facets of the information processing problem, exemplified by the following active research areas: databases; knowledge management systems; peer-to-peer computing; distributed computing and Web-based systems.

ADVANCED TELECOMMUNICATION RESEARCH (Co-ordinators: Dr A Bagula and Dr H Le).

Topics of interest include Smart Networking using Cars, Robots, UAVs, Sensors, Actuators and RFID tag-enabled devices; Traffic and Network Engineering for Next Generation IP Networks and Overlay networks; Efficient Frequency Management using cognitive Radio; Pan African Research and Education Network Infrastructures and Bandwidth Limitation and Information Accessibility in Developing Countries; Distributed Healthcare Data Networks; and Mobile Applications for the Developing World.

COLLABORATIVE VISUAL COMPUTING (Co-ordinator: Professor E Blake). Topics of research include: Collaborative Virtual Environments; Usability and Human-Computer Interaction; Computer

Graphics; Image Analysis applied to Medical Images; Virtual Reality and Behavioural Therapy; Allowing End-Users to Create Interesting Virtual Environments; Interaction with Mobile Computing Devices; Scalable Interfaces; and implications of these for Government Information Technology Policy. Special interests within the CVC lab include Socially Aware Computing, VR Methodology, Virtual Environments and the Geometry Interest Group.

DATA NETWORK ARCHITECTURES (Co-ordinator: Professor P Kritzinger). Work in the DNA group focuses on the specification and analysis of computer protocols and associated software as well as fixed line communication networks. The group's main research interest lie in the security, correctness, performance analysis, design, specification and modelling of stochastic concurrent communicating systems (SCCS) in general, and telecommunication systems in particular.

DIGITAL LIBRARIES (Co-ordinator: Dr H Suleman). Research areas covered within digital libraries include information storage and retrieval; multilingual retrieval; Web-based systems; scalable and flexible repositories; interoperability and protocols; component-based systems; Open Access; and cultural heritage preservation.

HIGH PERFORMANCE COMPUTING (Co-ordinator: Dr M Kuttel). This laboratory hosts investigations into all aspects of high performance and high throughput computing, including: parallel architectures and algorithms; scientific computing; high performance visualisation; large-scale information retrieval; high-performance digital archives; grid and volunteer computing; software optimization; and multi-core and GPU programming.

ICT FOR DEVELOPMENT CENTRE (Director: Associate Professor G Marsden). The UCT Centre in ICT for Development seeks to create ICTs that are appropriate for developing nations. To date, most innovation in ICT has been driven by the developed world to meet challenges originating from that context. This centre will design, create and evaluate technologies that address the needs of the developing world and the people who live there.

Undergraduate Courses

First-Year Courses

CSC1010H COMPUTER SCIENCE 1010

This course is part of the General Entry for Programmes in Science.

Course co-ordinator(s): Mr G Stewart

Entrance requirements: The permission of the Dean or the Head of Department is required prior to registration for this course which forms part of the General Entry for Programmes in Science.

Course outline:

As for CSC1015F

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	
--	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	--

Lectures:	5	5	5	5		This includes one tutorial per week.
------------------	---	---	---	---	--	--------------------------------------

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursdays, 14h00-17h30.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

Assessment: Theory tests count 15%; practical tests and practical assignments count 25%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 60%. Subminima: 45% for practicals, 45% for theory tests and examination.

NOTE: Credit will not be given for CSC1015F and CSC1016S together with any of the following: CSC1009F/S, CSC1010H, CSC1011H.

CSC1011H COMPUTER SCIENCE 1011

This course is part of the General Entry for Programmes in Science.

Course co-ordinator(s): Mr G Stewart

Entrance requirements: CSC1010H, MAM1005H

52 DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

Course outline:

As for CSC1016S with additional project work in the 1st semester.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 This includes one tutorial per week

Practicals: One practical per week, Mondays, 14h00-17h30.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

Assessment: Theory tests count 25%; practical tests and practical assignments count 25%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for practicals, 45% for theory tests and examination.

CSC1015F COMPUTER SCIENCE 1015

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr H Suleman

Entrance requirements: Mathematics at NSC level 5 or better (or senior certificate HG D).

Course outline:

Introduction to computing and applications. Problem solving, algorithm development and object-oriented programming in Java. Fundamental programming constructs and abstractions. Number representation, boolean algebra and logic gates.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5 This includes one tutorial per week.

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday, Tuesday or Wednesday, 14h00-17h30.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

Assessment: Theory tests count 15%; practical tests and practical assignments count 25%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 60%. Subminima: 45% for practicals, 45% for theory tests and examinations.

CSC1016S COMPUTER SCIENCE 1016

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr H Suleman

Entrance requirements: CSC1015F (or supp for CSC1015F) or CSC1010H or CSC1018F.

Course outline:

Advanced programming constructs and techniques in the object-oriented paradigm. Linear abstract data structures including Lists, Stacks and Queues. Binary trees and their applications. Event-driven programming, graphics and graphical user interfaces. Ethics and professional issues in computing.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5 This includes one tutorial per week.

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday, Tuesday or Wednesday, 14h00-17h30.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

Assessment: Theory tests count 15%; practical tests and practical assignments count 25%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 60%. Subminima: 45% for practicals and 45% for theory tests and examination.

CSC1018F COMPUTER SCIENCE 1018

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Gain

Entrance requirements: Mathematics at NSC level 5 or better (or senior certificate HG D) and Information Technology at NSC level 7 (or senior certificate Computer Studies HG A). Passing a Java competency exam.

Objective: This course is an alternative to CSC1015F. It is intended for students who have mastered the Java programming language at a school level and wish to learn an alternative programming

paradigm.

Course outline:

The following fundamental Computer Science concepts are taught:

- The Object Orientated approach to program design and implementation
- General techniques for algorithmic Problem Solving
- Methodologies for Software Engineering

This will be taught within the context of the Python OpenSource interpreted scripting language. The course will be timetabled with two lectures and practical work weekly. This will be combined with structured self-learning.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4

Practicals: One practical per week, by arrangement.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

Assessment: Tests count 15%; quizzes count 5%; practical work counts 20%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 60%. Subminima: 45% for practicals and 45% for theory.

Second-Year Courses

CSC2001F COMPUTER SCIENCE 2001

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr P Marais

Entrance requirements: CSC1016S or CSC1011H, MAM1000W or equivalent. It is STRONGLY recommended that students register concurrently for second-year courses in Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Statistics.

Course outline:

CONCEPTS OF C++: C++ vs Java, Building a C++ program, Basic constructs, Overloading & Inheritance.

ADVANCED C++: Templates, Advanced STL Containers and Iterators, Operator Overloading, Exceptions, File I/O

DATA STRUCTURES: Abstract data types and assertions; Linear structures - lists, strings, stacks, queues; Recursive algorithms, tree structures - binary trees, AVL trees, B-Trees; Graphs - Graph traversals, minimum spanning trees, sets, hashing, priority queues.

SOFTWARE ENGINEERING-1: Object Oriented Analysis, Design & Testing using UML.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2 Four or five lectures per week.

Practicals: One 4-hour practical per week, Monday to Friday, 14h00-18h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

Assessment: Tests count for 16.7%; practicals and projects count 33.3%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for tests and examinations.

CSC2002S COMPUTER SCIENCE 2002

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr P Marais

Entrance requirements: CSC2001F (or supp for CSC2001F), MAM1000W or equivalent. It is strongly recommended that students register concurrently for second-year courses in Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Statistics.

Course outline:

ARCHITECTURE: Abstractions, performance, instructions, arithmetic, the processor: datapath & control, pipelining, memory hierarchy, peripherals and parallel processors.

SOFTWARE ENGINEERING-2: Project Management, Scoping, Cost and Effort Estimation, Risk Analysis, Scheduling and Tracking, Software Quality Assurance, Software Configuration

54 DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

Management.

HUMAN COMPUTER INTERACTION: User Centered Design, User modelling, Universal Access and Design for All, Evaluation techniques.

DATABASES: Database management systems, conceptual modelling, database design, relational database query and manipulation.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2 Four lectures per week.

Practicals: One 4-hour practical per week, Monday to Friday, 14h00-18h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work and minimum of 50% in practical test.

Assessment: Tests count for 16.7%; practicals, practical test and projects count 33.3%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for tests and examinations.

CSC2003S COMPUTER GAMES

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor E Blake

Entrance requirements: CSC2001F, MAM1000W or equivalent.

Course outline:

Introduction - History of Games, Genres of Games Playability and Design - Play, Narrative, Design Process, Design Documents. 2D Game Programming - Game APIs, Game Technology, Interaction. Game Software Engineering - Game SE Methodology. AI/Simulation - Simulation and Search Strategies, Text Based Games and Advanced Topics.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3 Four lectures and 1 tutorial per week.

Practicals: One 4-hour practical per week, Monday to Friday, 14h00-18h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work, minimum of 50% in practical test and minimum of 40% in theory tests.

Assessment: Tests count for 16.7%; practicals, practical test and projects count 33.3%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for tests and examinations.

Third-Year Courses

CSC3002F COMPUTER SCIENCE 3002

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor S Berman

Entrance requirements: CSC2001F and CSC2002S. It is strongly recommended that students should have completed a second-year course in Mathematics, Applied Mathematics or Statistics.

Course outline:

Networks, Operating Systems, XML and Web-based computing.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2

Practicals: Two 4-hour practicals per week, Monday to Friday, 14h00-18h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

Assessment: Tests count 15%; practical work counts 35%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for practicals; 45% for tests and examination.

CSC3003S COMPUTER SCIENCE 3003

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor S Berman

Entrance requirements: As for CSC3002F.

Course outline:

Compilers, Theory of Algorithms

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 2 2 2 2 2**Practicals:** Two 4-hour practicals per week, Monday to Friday, 14h00-18h00.**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.**Assessment:** Tests count 15%; practical work counts 35%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for practicals, 45% for tests and examination.**CSC3020H THREE DIMENSIONAL & DISTRIBUTED GAMES DESIGN****Course co-ordinator(s):** Professor E Blake**Entrance requirements:** CSC2001F, CSC2002S and CSC2003S.**Course outline:**

Computer Graphics for Gaming, Agents in Gaming, Multi-User and Distributed Games, Game Design.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 3 3 3 3 3**Practicals:** 4 hours per week, by arrangement**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.**Assessment:** Tests count 16.7%; practical work counts 33.3%; examinations count 50%. Subminima: 45% for practicals, 45% for tests and examinations.**Postgraduate Courses****CSC4000W BSc (HONS) IN COMPUTER SCIENCE****Course co-ordinator(s):** To be advised**Entrance requirements:** Students must have a BSc degree in Information Technology from UCT, with an average of at least 60% in CSC3002F and CSC3003S. Registrations are limited to 45.**Course outline:**

A pamphlet outlining the year's programme is available from the Department. Two-thirds of the requirements for the course are made up of coursework and one third from the major project. The courses given vary from year to year but will usually be a selection from: Computer Networks; Research Methods, Distributed Systems; Database Systems; Human Computer Interaction; Computer Graphics; Computer Architecture; Network Security; New Venture Planning.

Some courses may also be taken from the Departments of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics, and Statistics, from the Department of Electrical Engineering or from other departments, with approval of the Honours Course co-ordinator. The student will be required to complete a major project for a third of the requirements for the course. Work on this major project is spread over the entire academic year. In addition, completion of a short module on oral and written professional communication skills, at the start of the course, is required.

Assessment: Examinations and practical work in the compulsory and optional modules together comprise two thirds of the final mark, and the project counts one third of the final mark. There is a subminimum of 50% on the project and a subminimum of 40% on each module. The final mark must be at least 50%.**MAM4007W BSc (HONS) IN MATHEMATICS OF COMPUTER SCIENCE**

See details under the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

CSC4016W BSc (HONS) IN INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: Entrance requirement is a Bachelors degree with a major in Computer Science or related field. Students must have an average of at least 60% in the major. Entry to CSC4000W and CSC4016W is restricted by available resources to 45 students; priority will be given to students meeting the requirements for CSC4000W. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of final year results, and material covered in the undergraduate curriculum.

Course outline:

A pamphlet outlining the year's programme is available from the Department. Two-thirds of the requirements for the course are made up of coursework and one third from the major project. The courses given vary from year to year but will usually be a selection from: Computer Networks; Research Methods; Distributed Systems; Database Systems; Human Computer Interaction; Computer Graphics; Computer Architecture; Network Security; New Venture Planning.

Some courses may also be taken from the Departments of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics, and Statistics, from the Department of Electrical Engineering or from other departments, with approval of the Honours course co-ordinator. The student will be required to complete a major project for a third of the requirements for the course. Work on this major project is spread over the entire academic year. In addition, completion of a short module on oral and written professional communication skills, at the start of the course, is required.

This course is intended for students who are NOT seeking accreditation from the British Computer Society.

Assessment: Examinations and practical work in the compulsory and optional modules together comprise two thirds of the final mark, and the project counts one third of the final mark. There is a subminimum of 50% on the project and a subminimum of 40% on each module. The final mark must be at least 50%.

CSC5000W MASTERS IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor G Marsden

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree or four year equivalent.

Course outline:

Certain applicants who are graduates of universities other than the University of Cape Town may be required to complete specified courses. Continued registration is dependent upon successful completion of these courses.

This degree may be conferred after satisfactory completion of a dissertation embodying research under the guidance of an approved supervisor. The normal duration of the course is two years although it may be completed in one year. The Department has a research programme in association with industry and, depending on the research topic, additional funding may be available. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

CSC5001W and CSC5002W MASTERS IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

(by coursework and dissertation)

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor G Marsden

Entrance requirements: See CSC5000W.

Course outline:

Candidates are required to complete coursework (CSC5001W) involving studies in database theory, computer networks and protocols, artificial intelligence, computer graphics, distributed computing and software engineering, at the end of which they will sit formal examinations. They are required also to submit a dissertation (CSC5002W) which counts half of the requirements for the degree. The course lasts at least one year. Candidates must have a relevant Honours degree.

CSC5003W and CSC5004W CONVERSION MASTERS IN INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor G Marsden

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree or 4-year equivalent plus access to the Internet.

Course outline:

CSC5003W is the taught component of the course comprising of nine modules in: Object-oriented programming; Human-Computer Interaction; Databases; Networks; Web Programming; Software Engineering; Cyberlaw and Ethics; Advanced Programming; Research Methods. All study is via on-line self-study materials. CSC5004W consists of a one year research project submitted as a dissertation. The total period of study is 24 months.

CSC6000W PhD IN COMPUTER SCIENCE

Supervision is provided in the areas of research represented in the Department. The Department has a research programme in association with industry and, depending on the research topic, additional funding may be available. Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

The Department is housed in the Shell Environment & Geographical Science Building, South Lane
Telephone (021) 650-2874 Fax (021) 650-3456
The Departmental abbreviation for Environmental & Geographical Science is EGS.

Professor and Head of Department:

M E Meadows, BSc (Hons) *Sussex* PhD *Cantab* FSSAG

Emeritus Professors:

R J Davies, MSc *Rhodes* PhD *London* FSSAG

R F Fuggie, BSc (Hons) *UED Natal* MSc *Louisiana* PhD *McGill*

South African Research Chair in Climate Change:

B C Hewitson, BSc *Cape Town* MSc PhD *Penn State*

Honorary Professors:

J Boardman, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cantab*

J Crush, MA *Cantab* MA *Laurier* PhD *Queens*

D S G Thomas, MA PhD *Cantab*

Professor:

S M Parnell, MA PhD *Wits*

Associate Professors:

S E Oldfield, BA (Hons) *Syracuse* MA PhD *Minnesota*

M F Ramutsindela, MA *UNIN* PhD *London*

M R Sowman MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Senior Lecturers:

F D Eckardt, BSc (Hons) *KCL* MSc *Cranfield* DPhil *Oxon*

R C Hill, BSc (Eng) *Cape Town* Pr Eng PhD *Cape Town*

Lecturers:

B J Abiodun, MTech *FUTA* PhD *Uppsala*

J Battersby-Lennard, MA *Newcastle* DPhil *Oxon*

S Daya, MA PhD *Durham*

K J Winter, BA (Hons) *Cape Town* MA *London* PhD *Cape Town*

G Ziervogel, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes* DPhil *Oxon*

Postgraduate Co-ordinator:

P Anderson, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Research Fellow:

L Nathan BBus Sci/LLB *Cape Town* MPhil *Bradford*

Administrative Officer:

S Adams

Senior Secretary:

S Samsodien

Librarian:

S Reddy, BA PGDipLIS MPhil (Adult Educ) *Cape Town*

Laboratory Departmental Assistant:

S Hess

Library Assistant:

T George

ENVIRONMENTAL EVALUATION UNIT

Director:

M R Sowman, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Deputy Director:

R P Wynberg, BSc (Hons) MSc MPhil *Cape Town* PhD *Strathclyde*

Senior Researchers:

R Hamann, BSc (Hons) *MSc Cape Town PhD UEA*

M Hauck, MA (Criminology) *Cape Town*

Researchers:

V Mduzuzi Zungu, BSocSci (Hons) *MSc UKZN*

S Williams, BA (Hons) *MA UWC*

Intern:

N Madlokazi BSc (Hons) *UFH*

Office Manager:

A Arendse

Secretary:

F Hartley

DISASTER MITIGATION FOR SUSTAINABLE LIVELIHOODS PROGRAMME (DiMP)

Director:

A Holloway, BA Soc Sci *Massey MA Washington DrPH UCLA*

Project Administrator:

S Prime

Risk Reduction Researchers:

R Roomaney, BA (Hons) *Cape Town*

P Zweig, MA *Cape Town*

Knowledge Management Co-ordinator:

G Fortune, Nat.Dipl. IT *CPUT*

RESEARCH IN ENVIRONMENTAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

Research in Environmental and Geographical Science embraces a variety of topics that are listed below. More detailed information can be obtained by writing to the Department of Environmental and Geographical Science or by consulting the departmental website, www.egs.uct.ac.za.

The Department undertakes research into numerous aspects of the environment, but is particularly involved in studies of environmental change and human-environment interactions. There is an active graduate programme. An 18-month Master's degree in Environmental Management is organised and taught within the Department, and research for higher degrees is also supervised in the more traditional way. There are postgraduate programmes in Environmental & Geographical Science and Disaster Risk Science by coursework and dissertation.

Of major interest is the identification and evaluation of environmental problems, along with the assessment of environmental impacts. The Environmental Evaluation Unit of the Department is active in projects which involve assessing the impact of development projects on the biophysical and social environment.

An area of growing concern relates to the increasing impact of natural and other threats. The Disaster Mitigation for Sustainable Livelihoods Programme (DiMP) focuses its teaching, research and policy advocacy efforts on promoting disaster mitigation as a key component of sustainable development.

The problem of urbanization in Africa provides a focus for staff engaged in an analysis of the process in both contemporary and historical contexts. Biogeographical research is also pursued by staff and research students. The ways in which environmental change and human activities have shaped the landscape and vegetation patterns of southern Africa are interpreted through palaeoecological, remote sensing and geomorphological studies. The Department houses a large reference collection of pollen slides and photographs which is used in reconstructing former vegetation types. Research in climatology focuses on Southern Hemisphere climate variability, regional implications of global climate change, climate modelling, precipitation controls, satellite climatology, and mesoscale meteorology.

Undergraduate Courses

Field work

All students attending courses in Environmental & Geographical Science are required to take part in field work arranged during the year.

First-Year Courses

AGE1003H FOUNDATIONS OF BIOLOGY, EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES

A course for students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS), providing a general introduction to the study of the Earth and its living and non-living systems. For course details see entry under Department of Archaeology.

GEO1009F INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES 1009

See course details under the Department of Geological Sciences.

EGS1003S GEOGRAPHY, DEVELOPMENT & ENVIRONMENT

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor M F Ramutsindela

Entrance requirements: Geography at NSC level 4 or Senior Certificate HG pass or GEO1009F (or ERT1000F)

Course outline:

The course introduces students to development and environment debates in geography, by exploring the geography of third world development, focusing on the historical roots and spatial patterns that underpin development.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Lectures:	2	2	2	2	2

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Monday, Tuesday or Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

Fieldwork: There is a compulsory fieldwork component involving half-day field excursions.

DP requirements: Attendance and satisfactory completion of practicals, including fieldwork, and tutorial assignments; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework component.

Assessment: Essays, a class test, practical assignments (including fieldwork) and tutorial work count 60%; one 2-hour theory paper written in November counts 40% (subminimum of 40% required).

EGS1004S INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES

Note: EGS1004S is a tutorial-based reinforcement of GEO1009F. Credit will not be given for both GEO1009F and EGS1004S. No supplementary examination will be offered.

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: DP in ERT1000F or GEO1009F.

Course outline:

As for GEO1009F.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Friday, 14h00-17h00.

Assessment: Marked classwork counts 40%; one 3-hour theory examination written in November counts 45%; one 1-hour practical examination written in November counts 15%. Subminima of 40% are required in practical and theory examination papers.

Second-Year Courses

EGS2013F THE PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr F Eckardt

Entrance requirements: GEO1009F or EGS1004S (or ERT1000F or ERT1002S)

Course outline:

The course focuses on contemporary Atmosphere-Earth surface interactions in particular the role of precipitation and water from a global to a regional scale and examines temporal dynamics, driven by natural process as well as anthropogenic pressures. It covers in detail global circulation patterns, climate variability, soil formation, polar response to climate change, tropical deforestation, desertification and earth observation technology. It concludes with a detailed study of local scale systems and applications covering stream catchments, estuaries, wetlands and coastlines. It is expected that students will enhance their understanding of Earth system dynamics, systems interactions and develop an appreciation for scales both temporal and spatial. Students are also expected to put the local context into a regional setting and make linkages to the larger global picture.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical per week, Friday, 14h00-17h00.

Fieldwork: There is a compulsory fieldwork component involving half-day field excursions.

DP requirements: Satisfactory completion of practicals and all written assignments, including projects, fieldwork reports, practicals, essays and class tests. Students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.

Assessment: Project, essays, class tests and practical assignments including fieldwork report count 50%; two 2-hour examinations written in June count 50% (subminimum of 40% required).

EGS2014S CONTEMPORARY URBAN CHALLENGES

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Battersby-Lennard

Entrance requirements: For BSc: EGS1003S (or EGS1002S); For BA or BSocSci: EGS1003S (or EGS1002S) or Social Science Foundation course and two full first year Humanities courses, or equivalent).

Course outline:

This course draws together historical and contemporary analysis of social, political, economic and environmental dimensions of the South African city. This conceptual material is grounded in field-based experiential learning in Cape Town.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Friday, 14h00-17h00.

Fieldwork: There is a compulsory fieldwork component involving half-day field excursions.

DP requirements: Attendance and satisfactory completion of practical including fieldwork and tutorial assignments; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.

Assessment: Essays, a class test, practical assignments based on compulsory fieldwork and tutorial work count 60%; one 2-hour theory paper written in November counts 40% (subminimum of 40% required).

Third-Year Courses

EGS3012S SYNOPTIC CLIMATOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr B J Abiodun

Entrance requirements: GEO1009F (or ERT1000F) or ERT1002S (or EGS1004S), EGS2013F (or EGS2012S) or SEA2002S or SEA2003F or approved 2000-level Science course or any 1000-level Physics course.

Course outline:

Atmospheric energy balance; winds and circulations; clouds and cloud formation; thermodynamics; rainfall and weather systems in the tropics and midlatitudes; general circulation of the atmosphere; South African weather and climate; droughts and floods.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Practicals: One practical per week, Tuesday or Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Satisfactory completion of practicals and all written assignments, including essays, project reports and class tests.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 20%; project reports and practicals count 20%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 60% (subminimum of 40% required).

EGS3016F POPULATION DYNAMICS, MEASUREMENT & PROCESSES I

NOTE: This course is offered by Centre for Actuarial Research (CARE), Third floor PD Hahn Building.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr T Moultrie

Entrance requirements: MAM1000W, STA1006H (or STA1005H) and a full second year course (or equivalent) in Mathematics, Statistics, Economics or Environmental and Geographical Science.

Course outline:

This course, together with its successor in the second semester (EGS3019S), teaches the basic skills of demographic data analysis and description.

Topics covered in EGS3016F include:

Global and regional population change and growth; age-and sex composition of populations; standardisation; simple measurement of fertility, mortality, nuptiality and migration; sources of demographic data; the construction, interpretation, and uses of life tables; stationary populations; basic population projections. Emphasis is placed on learning how to solve practical demographic problems.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Friday, 6th and 7th period.

DP requirements: Students must submit all tutorials and write all tests, and obtain a subminimum of 35% for the coursework component.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 40%; one 3-hour written examination in June counts 60%. A subminimum of 50% for the examination is required to pass the course.

EGS3017S POPULATION DYNAMICS, MEASUREMENT & PROCESSES II

NOTE: This course is offered by Centre for Actuarial Research (CARE), Third floor P D Hahn Building.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr T Moultrie

Entrance requirements: EGS3016F.

Course outline:

This course develops and extends the material presented in EGS3016F, and relaxes many of the simplifying assumptions made in the earlier course.

Topics covered in EGS3017S include:

Further considerations on sources, uses and validation of demographic data including measures of data quality; the force of mortality; stable population theory; multiple-decrement life tables; survival analysis; period vs cohort measures of fertility; proximate determinants of fertility and child mortality; analysis of birth intervals and parity progression.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Friday, 6th and 7th period.

DP requirements: Students must submit a research project as well as all tutorials and write all tests, and obtain a subminimum of 35% for the coursework component.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 20%; research project report counts 30%; one 3-hour written examination in November counts 50%. A subminimum of 50% for the examination is required to pass the course.

EGS3018F INTRODUCTION TO POPULATION STUDIES

NOTE: This course is offered by Centre for Actuarial Research (CARE). Third floor P D Hahn Building.

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: EGS2014S (or EGS2011S) or SOC2019F.

Course outline:

This course aims to enable the student to describe and understand the foundational material of population studies. The course will cover the size, distribution and growth of the populations of the main developing regions and countries; levels, trends and differentials in fertility, mortality and marriage in developing countries; the causes of mortality decline in the developing world; synergistic interactions associated with infectious diseases and child malnutrition; the social and economic consequences of rapid population growth; possible costs and benefits of having children for peasant couples; other factors affecting fertility. Additionally, the course will cover topics such as the spread of HIV/AIDS and its demographic implications; patterns and trends in migration and urbanisation in developing countries as well as the social, biological and economic influences on population growth rates, especially the role of famine, disease and war; the demographic and health transitions; the changing characteristics of the family; global trends in population ageing and their social and economic consequences for the elderly; theories and trends in migration; urbanisation.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Lectures:	3	3	3	3	

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Friday, 3rd period.

DP requirements: Students must submit and attend all tutorials and submit a long essay of not less than 4000 words, and obtain a subminimum of 35% for the coursework component.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 40%; one 3-hour written examination in June counts 60%. A subminimum of 50% for the examination is required to pass the course.

EGS3019S POPULATION & DEVELOPMENT

NOTE: This course is offered by Centre for Actuarial Research (CARE). Third floor P D Hahn Building.

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: EGS3018F and EGS2014S (or EGS2011S) or SOC2019F.

Course outline:

Beginning with the work of Thomas Malthus, this course traces the evolution of discourses of population and its relationships with society, economics and politics, through to the work of Paul Ehrlich (The 'population bomb') and the rise of a new consensus on population at the 1994 International Conference of Population and Development. The course critically examines the different analytic approaches to the main interrelationships between population changes and socio-economic development. Drawing on a variety of theoretical and historical experiences to address and explore these interconnections and the principal debates concerning them, the course aims to provide balance between theoretical understanding, knowledge of empirical processes, and implications for policy.

We address Malthusian, anti-Malthusian and neo-Malthusian perspectives on the linkages between population, socio-economic development and the environment, comparing and contrasting contemporary and historical evidence. A great deal of attention is devoted to an assessment of demographic transition theory in both its original and subsequent formulations. The implications of the theory for economic development, urbanisation and socio-structural change are debated.

In addition, we shall consider the role of the state in affecting population outcomes; the role of population policies, family planning programmes and the means and mechanisms of assessing the efficiency and efficacy of population programmes.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------

Lectures:	3	3	3	3	
------------------	---	---	---	---	--

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Friday, 3rd period.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 50%; one 3-hour written examination in November counts 50%. A subminimum of 50% for the examination is required to pass the course.

DP requirements: Students must submit and attend all tutorials and submit a long essay of not less than 4000 words, and obtain a subminimum of 35% for the coursework component.

EGS3020F ENVIRONMENTAL CHANGE & CHALLENGE

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor M E Meadows

Entrance requirements: EGS2013F, EGS2014S (or EGS2010F, EGS2012S)

Course outline:

The course explores the nature of physical environmental change as manifested through processes associated with biological, physical and human components of ecosystems with a focus on southern Africa. The recent geological past (the late Quaternary) provides a longer term perspective that enables recent and contemporary environmental changes to be placed in context. The nature and extent of human impact on landscapes is examined along with a consideration of how conservation efforts are applied in order to mitigate these changes. Environmental change is conceptualised as geohazard; and disaster risk and disaster risk profiling is introduced at the regional and local scale. The course further considers key land surface processes in a range of environments and how these respond to environmental dynamics.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------

Lectures:	5	5	5	5	5
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

Fieldwork: There is a compulsory four day residential field excursion during the University vacation.

DP requirements: Attendance at residential fieldwork during a University vacation is compulsory; satisfactory completion of practicals and all written assignments, including fieldwork report, essays and class tests. Students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.

Assessment: Field report, essays, class tests and practical assignments count 50%; two 2-hour examinations written in June count 50% (sub-minimum of 40% required).

EGS3021F SUSTAINABILITY & ENVIRONMENT**Course co-ordinator(s):** Associate Professor M Sowman**Entrance requirements:** EGS2013F, EGS2014S (or two of EGS2010F, EGS2011S, EGS2012S)**Course outline:**

The course critically engages with current debates and discourses in the fields of sustainability, vulnerability and environmental management, including examination of key concepts such as integration, systems-thinking, complexity, equity, vulnerability, risk, resilience, adaptation and mitigation. Approaches and methods for analysing environmental problems and integrating risk reduction as well as sustainability principles and practices into policy, programme, plan and project cycle processes are investigated and applied in different contexts.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 3 3 3 3 3**Practicals:** One practical per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.**Fieldwork:** There is a compulsory fieldwork component involving half-day field excursions.**DP requirements:** Attendance and satisfactory completion of practicals (including fieldwork), other assignments and tests; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.**Assessment:** Practical reports (including fieldwork), class tests and other assignments count 60%; one 3-hour June examination counts 40% (subminimum of 45% required).

EGS3022S GEOGRAPHIC THOUGHT**Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr S Daya**Entrance requirements:** EGS2013F, EGS2014S (or EGS2010F, EGS2011S)**Course outline:**

The course focuses on international debates in classical and contemporary human geography. It considers important thematic areas in the geographical literature, such as: development; spatiality; urban, political and feminist geographies.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 4 4 4 4 4**Practicals:** One practical or tutorial per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.**DP requirements:** Satisfactory completion of essay assignments and class test; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.**Assessment:** Essay and other assignments count 60%; two 2-hour written examinations in November count 40% (subminimum of 40% required).

Postgraduate Courses

Ancillary activities

In addition to formal courses, students undertaking postgraduate courses are required to participate fully in other departmental activities of an academic nature. Such activities are weekly seminars on environmental topics addressed by persons prominent in their fields, field camps and field exercises away from Cape Town, and study tours to obtain first-hand exposure to environmental problems and their solutions. Graduate students who, in the opinion of the Head of Department, have not had adequate exposure to undergraduate courses with environmental content may also be required to attend specified courses.

EGS4001W BSc (HONS) IN ATMOSPHERIC SCIENCE**Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr B J Abiodun**Entrance requirements:** As for EGS4004W, with the additional requirement of at least a half-

course in Mathematics or a full-course in Physics, as well as a senior undergraduate course in climatology or atmospheric science. Experience with computers is highly recommended.

Course outline:

The Atmospheric Science programme provides a 4th year of development for those interested in following a career associated with atmospheric science and climatology, or for progression to research in this area. The focus is on practical skills and the application of theory to the issues related to the climate system. The programme follows the same pattern as EGS4004W, with the constraint that three of four course modules must be from the atmospheric options, and the fourth module from one of the honours level physical science options in Environmental & Geographical Science or the Oceanography department. Included in the requirements are a dissertation, two seminar presentations, and course fieldwork. Students will also attend and present at the annual conference of the South African Society for Atmospheric Scientists.

Assessment: The examinations will follow the same structure as EGS4004W. Not all course options have formal examinations, and a significant portion of the total coursework mark may be based on set project tasks. The research project counts 25%.

EGS4004W BSc (HONS) IN ENVIRONMENTAL & GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr P Anderson

Entrance requirements: A BSc degree with a major in Environmental & Geographical Science or related field. Enrollments are limited to 30, and acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of final year results, material covered in the undergraduate curriculum, and referee reports. Preference may be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements.

Course outline:

There are three Honours streams within Environmental & Geographical Science: Environmental Management, Human Geography and Physical Geography. Students complete four advanced semester modules. In all streams, one of these four modules must be a research methods module. Students complete a research methods course and then select a further three modules from a range of advanced courses in Environmental and Geographical Science that have foundations in one or more of the following areas of study: Human Geography, Disaster Risk Science, Environmental Management, Physical Geography. Curricula must be approved by the course convenor in consultation with the Head of Department. In addition, each student completes a research project. At the discretion of the course convenor, in consultation with the Head of Department, students may take one course from outside the Department (in addition to the methods course) towards the BSc (Hons) degree in Environmental & Geographical Science.

Assessment: Courses will be examined at the end of each semester, and the marks combined with project, essay, field work and seminar presentation marks. The research project counts 25%.

EGS4008W BSc (HONS) IN DISASTER RISK SCIENCE

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr A Holloway

Entrance requirements: Students entering the programme must have completed a BSc degree in Environmental & Geographical Science or a related discipline. Individual specialist modules may carry additional prerequisites. In addition to submitting an application to the University, prospective candidates must complete an application form available from the department at www.egs.uct.ac.za

Course outline:

The programme aims to provide students with an integrated understanding of disaster risk and its implications for sustainable development in southern Africa, with a specific focus on South Africa. The programme contextualises disaster risk as an outcome of the interplay between human and natural factors. Students select four coursework modules from a range of core and optional courses, including an introduction to disaster risk science and a foundation course in research methods, as well as a disaster risk research project.

Assessment: All coursework modules are examinable through open book and 3-hour written

examinations; practicals, essays, reaction papers, projects and other assignments count 60% of the final mark of these modules in most instances. The research project counts 25%.

EGS5003W MASTERS IN ENVIRONMENTAL & GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

Following completion of an Honours degree (or equivalent) acceptable to the Head of Department, candidates must undertake an independent research project and submit the results in the form of a dissertation. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook. In addition to submitting an application to the University, prospective candidates must complete an application form available from the department.

EGS5008H and EGS5009W MPhil IN ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT

(by coursework and dissertation)

This MPhil programme is designed for students with diverse backgrounds who have an interest in environmental management. Environmental problems are interdisciplinary in nature and students with backgrounds in scientific, planning, engineering, economic, educational, social and legal disciplines are encouraged to apply.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr R C Hill

Entrance requirements: Students must hold an Honours degree (or equivalent). In special circumstances graduates who have shown by examination, or publication, or a record of appropriate training, that they have reached a level equivalent to an Honours degree may be admitted.

Applications for admission: Prospective students are advised that, because of the restricted number of places in the Environmental Management programme, only selected students are admitted. It is therefore imperative that intending applicants, in addition to submitting an application to the University, complete the application form available from the Department and submit this before the annual deadline - the date is displayed on the departmental website -see www.egs.uct.ac.za.

Course outline:

Prescribed coursework (EGS5008H): In the first year of the programme, students select coursework modules in, for example, Environmental Management, Environmental Law (for non-lawyers), Social and Economic Impact Assessment, Environmental Research Methods, Theory & Ethics of Environmental Management. Assessment for these modules includes both written examinations and coursework assignments.

Research project (EGS5009W): In the second year students undertake a research project demonstrating the application of theory to practical issues in environmental planning, impact assessment and management. The work must be submitted in the form of a dissertation that counts 50% of the final course outcome.

EGS5010H and EGS5020W MASTERS IN ENVIRONMENTAL & GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

(by coursework and dissertation)

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr P Anderson

Entrance requirements: Candidates must have completed a BSc (Hons) degree in Environmental & Geographical Science. Individual specialist modules may carry additional prerequisites. In addition to submitting an application to the University, prospective candidates must complete an application form available from the department.

Course outline:

Students select four modules from a range of advanced courses in Environmental & Geographical Science that have foundations in one or more of the following areas of study: Human Geography, Physical Geography, Atmospheric Science, Environmental Management, Geographical Information Systems. In addition, each student conducts a major research project examined by dissertation. At the discretion of the course convenor, in consultation with the Head of Department, students may count one or two modules from outside the department towards the MSc degree in Environmental & Geographical Science by coursework and dissertation.

Assessment: Modules are conventionally examined by 3-hour written papers in combination with various coursework elements such as essays, projects, practical assignments etc. The dissertation component counts 50%.

EGS5011H and EGS5021W MPhil IN DISASTER RISK SCIENCE

(by coursework and dissertation)

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr A Holloway

Entrance requirements: Students entering the programme must have completed an Honours degree in Disaster Risk Science or a closely related discipline. Individual specialist modules may carry additional prerequisites. In addition to submitting an application to the University, prospective candidates must complete an application form available from the department at www.egs.uct.ac.za.

Course outline:

The programme aims to provide students with an advanced understanding of disaster risk and its implications for sustainable development in southern Africa, with a specific focus on South Africa. The programme assumes an interdisciplinary perspective on disasters taking into consideration both biophysical elements (hazards) and social and economic forces that influence disaster vulnerability and resilience. Students select four advanced coursework modules and complete a major Disaster Risk Science research project.

Assessment: All coursework modules are examinable through open-book and 3-hour written examinations; practicals, essays, reaction papers, projects and other assignments count 60% of the final mark for these modules in most instances. The Master's research project counts 50% of the overall assessment for the degree.

EGS6003W PhD IN ENVIRONMENTAL & GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

Prospective candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies. In addition to submitting an application to the University, prospective candidates must complete an application form available from the department.

PBL6036F ENVIRONMENTAL LAW FOR NON-LAWYERS

NOTE: The following course is offered by the Faculty of Law and forms part of the taught modules offered in EGS5008H.

Course co-ordinator(s): A R Paterson

Entrance requirements: Successful completion of any undergraduate degree. Not available to students undertaking an LLB or LLM degree.

Course outline:

The inclusion of an environmental right in South Africa's Constitution has led to the emergence of many environmental laws and court decisions in the past ten years. These developments are of key relevance to those working in the environmental sector including developers, consultants, biologists, zoologists, planners, sociologists and anthropologists. This course provides students undertaking postgraduate studies relevant to the environment with an insight into relevant principles of international and domestic environmental law. Key content covered in the course includes: an introduction to basic legal principles and resources; constitutional aspects (environmental rights, access to information, administrative justice and access to courts); framework environmental laws; land-use planning laws (planning law, environmental impact assessment and protected areas); natural resource laws (biodiversity, water and marine living resources); and pollution laws (fresh water, land and air pollution).

Lectures: 2nd and 3rd, Tuesdays

DP requirements: Satisfactory attendance of lectures and completion of essays.

Assessment: Short assignment counts 10%, essay counts 40%, one 3-hour examination in June counts 50%.

DEPARTMENT OF GEOLOGICAL SCIENCES

The Department is housed in the Geological Sciences Building, 13 University Avenue
 Telephone (021) 650-2931 Fax (021) 650-3783
 The Departmental abbreviation for Geological Sciences is GEO.

Professor and Head of Department:

C Harris, MA DPhil *Oxon*

Emeritus Professors:

J J Gurney, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* FRSSAf

W E L Minter, BSc *Cape Town* PhD *Wits*

Emeritus Associate Professor:

J P Willis, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Chamber of Mines Professor of Geochemistry:

A P le Roex, BSc *Stell* BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Philipson-Stow Professor of Mineralogy and Geology:

M J de Wit, BSc (Hons) *Dublin* PhD *Cantab*

Associate Professors:

J S Compton, BA *San Diego* PhD *Harvard*

D L Reid, MSc *Wellington* PhD *Cape Town*

S H Richardson, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *MIT*

Senior Lecturer:

G C Smith, MA *Cantab*

Lecturers:

C D Rowe, PhD *Santa Cruz*

J F A Diener, MSc *Stell* PhD *Melbourne*

Senior Research Officer:

J Rogers, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Honorary Research Associates:

H E Frimmel, PhD *Vienna*

H C Klinger, MSc *Stell* PhD *Tubingen*

R M Smith, MSc *Wits* PhD *Cape Town*

Principal Scientific Officer:

Principal Technical Officers:

B A Cairns

V Moisey

Chief Technical Officer:

J Harrison

Chief Scientific Officer:

S Govender

Senior Scientific Officer:

R August, BSc (Hons) *UDW* MSc *Natal*

Scientific Officer:

F Rawoot, BSc *UWC*

Administrative Officer (part-time):

S Whitmore

Senior Secretary:

SAP R/3 Administrator:

J Butler

Technical Assistant:

P Sieas

Thin Section Technicians:

R van der Merwe

D Wilson

Departmental Assistants:

E W Stout

J van Rooyen

I Wilson

RESEARCH IN GEOLOGICAL SCIENCES

Research in Geological Sciences embraces a variety of topics that are listed below. More detailed information can be obtained by writing to the Department of Geological Sciences.

The Department has research strengths in geochemistry, structural geology and tectonics, igneous and metamorphic petrology, sedimentology, marine geology, economic geology and petroleum geophysics. General research interests include: global tectonics and geodynamics with emphasis on Gondwana geology; structural geology; oceanic and continental igneous processes and the geochemical evolution of the underlying mantle; kimberlites and the genesis of diamonds; open and closed system behaviour during metamorphism and related ore genesis; economic geology with emphasis on base metal deposits; environmental geochemistry; sedimentology, sedimentary geochemistry, and sedimentary processes; chemical stratigraphy and crisis in the geological record; marine sedimentology and geophysics. The Department is well equipped for analytical studies with X-ray fluorescence, electron microprobe, ion chromatograph, and X-ray diffraction equipment, a solution and laser ablation ICP-MS facility, a solid source mass spectrometer and access to gas-source mass spectrometers for oxygen, hydrogen and carbon stable isotope measurements. The Department is also well equipped for structural and tectonic analysis and seismic interpretation, with microcomputer laboratories and GIS work stations.

Undergraduate Courses**Field excursions:**

All students attending courses in Geology are required to take part in the field excursions arranged for them during the year. These excursions take place during the Easter and September mid-semester vacations, and full daily participation is required by all students.

Note: Supplementary examinations are not normally granted to students for senior courses in Geology.

First-Year Courses**GEO1009F INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES**

This course is presented jointly by the Departments of Archaeology, Environmental & Geographical Science and Geological Sciences, but administered by Geological Sciences.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor J S Compton

Entrance requirements: Physical Science, Life Sciences or Geography at NSC level 4 (or a senior certificate HG pass or SG A in Physical Science, Biology or Geography) or AGE1003H (or ERT1003H). Preference will be given to students registered in the Science Faculty.

Course outline:

Structure and dynamics of the Earth; stratigraphy and geological history; climatology; surface processes and evolution of landscapes; biogeography; humans and the environment.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------

Lectures:	2	2	2	2	2
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Tuesday or Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.

Fieldwork: Students are required to attend three half day excursions in the Cape Peninsula.

DP requirements: An average of 30% on all marked classwork and tests.

Assessment: Marked class work counts 24%; marked class tests count 16%; one 3-hour theory examination written in June counts 60%. A subminimum of 40% is required in the theory examination paper.

Note: Supplementary examinations will be written in November.

AGE1003H FOUNDATIONS OF BIOLOGY, EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES

A course for students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS), providing a general introduction to the study of the Earth and its living and non-living systems. For course details see entry under Department of Archaeology.

GEO1006S INTRODUCTION TO MINERALS, ROCKS & STRUCTURE

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor C Harris

Entrance requirements: A minimum of 45% in GEO1009F (or ERT1000F) or AGE1003H (or ERT1002S).

Course outline:

Crystals and minerals; Igneous and metamorphic rocks; Structural geology; Mineral deposits and economic geology; Palaeontology.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

Fieldwork: Students are required to attend a one-day excursion in the Cape Peninsula, and a four-day excursion through the southwestern Cape during the September vacation.

DP requirements: An average of 30% in all marked classwork and tests. Compulsory attendance at one tutorial session per week for all students who fail any class test, until such time as a subsequent test is passed.

Assessment: Class tests count 35%; field reports count 15%; one 2-hour theory examination written in November counts 50%. Subminimum of 40% is required in the theory examination paper.

GEO1007S EARTH STEWARDSHIP

Note: This is a cross-disciplinary course intended for students of all faculties. Students who would like to learn more about how the Earth works and how Earth's resources affect our lives and our future socio-economic welfare, are encouraged to attend.

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor M J de Wit

Entrance requirements: None

Course outline:

This course is divided into 3 sections:

1. Creating a habitable planet and analysing how Earth works as a gigantic recycling machine.
2. Managing a habitable planet and evaluating Earth as a service industry.
3. Developing new robust contracts between (geo)science and society.

Topics include: Origin of the solar and Earth-Moon systems; geological (deep) time; origin, structure and history of Earth; introduction of rocks, minerals and soils; Earth systems and the rock cycle, the water cycle, the carbon cycle, the nitrogen cycle; origin and evolution of life and humans. Earth's past punctuated record of extinctions, biodiversity collapses and recoveries; continental drift, plate tectonics and mountain building; snowball Earth and hothouse Earth; Earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, meteorite impacts and other natural disasters; exploring for and exhumation of Earth's resources; greenhouse gases and global warming; economics of exhaustible resources; socio- and political-issues in the geoscience arena; energy needs and resource conflicts in Africa; landscapes and manscapes of Africa.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 5 5 5 5 5**Practicals:** By arrangements on the website.**DP requirements:** An aggregate of 30% for term assignments, attendance on field trip.**Assessment:** Term assignments count 40%; a 3-hour November examination counts 60%.**Second-Year Courses****GEO2001F MINERALOGY & CRYSTALLOGRAPHY****Course co-ordinator(s):** Associate Professor S H Richardson**Entrance requirements:** GEO1009F (or ERT1000F), AGE1003H (or ERT1002S) and GEO1006S, 1000-level course in Chemistry.**Course outline:**

Crystallography, crystallographic calculations, and a brief introduction to X-ray crystallography. Crystal optics: the theory and practice of identifying minerals by means of the polarising microscope. Mineralogy: the chemical, physical and optical properties of selected groups of rock-forming minerals. Phase diagrams: interpretation of one, two and simple three component phase diagrams.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 2 2 2 2 2**Practicals:** One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.**DP requirements:** Attendance at 80% of practicals, and an average of 30% in all marked class work and tests.**Assessment:** Marked class work, including tests, count 20%; one 2-hour practical examination written in June counts 35%; one 2-hour theory paper written in June counts 45%. Subminima of 40% are required in practical and theory examination papers.**GEO2004S PHYSICAL GEOLOGY****Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr J Rogers**Entrance requirements:** GEO2001F**Course outline:**

Stratigraphy of South Africa. Transport and deposition of siliciclastic sediment. Sedimentary textures and structures. Siliciclastic, carbonate, evaporitic and other sedimentary rocks. Earthquakes, stress, displacement, and strain. Brittle and ductile deformation. Classification and petrography of igneous rocks; Physical processes in magma chambers. Relationship between chemical and mineralogical composition. Types of metamorphism, metamorphic textures and mineral assemblages.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 2 2 2 2 2**Practicals:** One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.**DP requirements:** An average of 30% in marked class work, and attendance at 80% of practicals.**Assessment:** Class tests and practicals count 25%; one 2-hour practical examination written in November counts 30%; one 2-hour theory paper written in November counts 45%. Subminima of 40% are required in practical and theory examination papers.**GEO2005X FIELD GEOLOGY & GEOLOGICAL MAPPING (second-year half course)****Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr C D Rowe

Entrance requirements: GEO1006S, GEO2004S (co-requisite).

Course outline:

This is a field-based course that introduces techniques used to identify, describe and document rocks in the field and for interpreting their inter-relationships, with the view to producing geological maps, stratigraphic logs and structural sections. Techniques covered include: mineralogical and textural descriptions of rocks using a hand-lens; measurement of attitude of bedding using compass and clinometer; measurement, description and interpretation of depositional and deformational structures; stereo plots, interpretation and use of aerial photographs; identifying contact relationships; GPS positioning. Course material is taught over four separate field camps spread over two years of study.

Lectures: None

Practicals: Five afternoons by arrangement.

Fieldwork: Nine days in Laingsburg area, nine days in Northern Cape/southern Namibia, three days in Southwestern Cape, nine days in southern Cape.

DP requirements: Attendance at all field camps.

Assessment: Maps and reports count for 70%; three 2-hour practical examinations in June and November count for 30%.

Third-Year Courses

GEO3001S STRATIGRAPHY & ECONOMIC GEOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor D L Reid

Entrance requirements: GEO2004S, DP in GEO3005F

Course outline:

The principles of stratigraphy with examples drawn from the South African rock record. The methods and procedures involved in dating rocks. The genesis of economic mineral deposits, their microscopic textures, and their valuation and exploitation. Geophysical techniques.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2

Practicals: Two practicals per week, Tuesday and Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: An average of 30% in all marked class work and class tests.

Assessment: Practical and tests count 25%; one 3-hour theory examination written in November counts 45%; two 2-hour practical examinations written in November count 30%. Subminima of 40% required in practical and theory examination papers.

GEO3005F PETROLOGY & STRUCTURAL GEOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J F A Diener

Entrance requirements: GEO2001F, GEO2004S, first qualifying course in Chemistry

Course outline:

Interpreting major and trace element and isotope variations in igneous rocks. Origin and evolution of the major magma series. Thermodynamics, kinetics and chemography of metamorphic reactions. Tectonic setting of metamorphic terrains. Principles of interpretations and classification of continental and marine sedimentary environments. Fault related folding, fold and thrust systems, kinematic principles and section balancing. Ductile deformation.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 2 2 2 2 2

Practicals: Two practicals per week, Tuesday and Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Attendance at 80% of practicals and an average of 30% in all marked class work and tests.

Assessment: Class work counts 20%; one 4-hour practical examination written in June counts 30%; one 3-hour theory paper written in June counts 50%. Subminima of 40% required in practical and theory examination papers.

Postgraduate Courses

GEO4000W BSc (HONS) IN GEOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor C Harris

Entrance requirements: A BSc degree with a major in Geology, first qualifying courses in Chemistry and Mathematics. A first qualifying course in Physics is recommended. The Senate may accept other courses as being equivalent to these and this criterion will be applied when considering Science graduates from other universities. Registrations are limited to 16 and acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department, who will consider quality of final year results, material covered in undergraduate curriculum, and referee reports in making decisions. Preference will be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements.

Course outline:

Students are required to elect one of three streams of study - General Geology, Geochemistry or Petroleum Geology. A selection of compulsory and elective modules are available for each stream, and would normally include the following: Analytical Geochemistry, Applied Geophysics, Petroleum Sedimentology (offered at the University of Stellenbosch), Economic Geology, Igneous Petrology, Isotope Geochemistry, Mantle Petrology, Marine Geochemistry, Marine Geology, Metamorphic Petrology, Petroleum Geology (offered at the University of the Western Cape), Sedimentology, Structural Geology. Evolution of the African Plate and Geodata Analysis are compulsory modules for all students. In addition, each student is required to undertake a supervised research project. Choice of optional modules and research project require the approval of the Honours course co-ordinator and Head of Department. All students are required to attend a two week field trip held during the year.

Assessment: The compulsory and optional modules will each have an associated examination held in mid-year and towards the end of the Honours year. These examinations will count 55%, practical and assignment work done during the year counts 20%, and the research project 25% towards the final grade. Subminima of 40% are required for overall exam mark and research project.

GEO4001W BSc (HONS) IN GEOCHEMISTRY

As for GEO4000W above, but with a restricted choice of modules.

GEO5000W MASTERS IN GEOLOGY

General rules for this degree may be found at the front of the handbook.

GEO5003W MASTERS IN GEOCHEMISTRY

General rules for this degree may be found at the front of the handbook.

GEO6000W PhD IN GEOLOGY

Prospective candidates are referred to the rules for the PhD degree in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

GEO6001W PhD IN GEOCHEMISTRY

Prospective candidates are referred to the rules for the PhD degree in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE, PLANNING AND GEOMATICS – DIVISION OF GEOMATICS

The division of Geomatics is part of the Faculty of Engineering and the Built Environment. Geoinformatics is only offered as a specialisation for the BSc degree when taken in conjunction with another SB012 specialisation or with SB006 Applied Computing.

The Department is housed in the Menzies Building
Telephone (021) 650-2675 Fax (021) 650-3572
The Departmental abbreviation for Geomatics Division is APG.

Emeritus Professor:

H Rütther, Dipl-Ing *Bonn* PhD *Cape Town* PrS(SA) FRSSAf

Emeritus Associate Professor:

C L Merry, BSc(Surv) *Cape Town* PhD *New Brunswick*

Senior Lecturers:

G Sithole, MSc IGP ITC (NL) PhD TUDelft (NL) *Zimbabwe*

J L Smit, BSc (Surveying) PhD *Cape Town*

J F Whittal, BSc(Surveying) MSc(Eng) *Cape Town* PhD *Calgary* PrL(SA) MSAGI

Lecturer:

S Motala, BSc (Surveying) *Natal* MSc (Eng) *Cape Town* PrL(SA)

Chief Technical Officer:

D Matthee, NHD (Mechanical Eng.) ND(Surveying)

Technical Officer:

P Chifamba

Senior Secretary:

S Shaffie

Laboratory Attendant:

S Smith

Undergraduate Courses

First-Year Courses

APG1015F PROGRAMMING FOR GEOMATICS

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr G Sithole

Entrance requirements: None

Course outline:

Course Aims: To provide students with competence in developing GIS/Geomatics applications using high-level programming languages and scripting for and customisation of Geographic Information System (GIS) and Geomatics applications. Furthermore, students are equipped with skills to develop algorithms for Geomatics and GIS problem solving as well as being competent in the use of GIS/Geomatics applications.

Course Content: Introduction - Computing in Geomatics and GIS, Programming paradigms, Essential concepts in programming, Input/Output and essential data formats, Structured programming, Extended data types, O-O programming, Trigonometric functions and examples in Geomatics, 2D Graphics, 3D Graphics, VB vs VB.Net, VB.Net vs C/C++ and Java.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 4

Practicals: One practical per week, Wednesday 6th to 8th period.

76 DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE, PLANNING AND GEOMATICS - DIVISION OF GEOMATICS

DP requirements: Completion of all tests and practical assignments with a minimum average of 50%.

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments.

APG1016S GEOMATICS I

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Whittal

Entrance requirements: APG1015F or CSC1015F or equivalent

Course outline:

Course Aims: To provide a foundation in geomatics as a measurement science by introducing key concepts, instrumentation, techniques and conventions in the discipline.

Course Content: Introduction to geomatics, principles of measurement science, spatial data, reference systems and datums, coordinate systems, projections, spatial computations on the plane, surveying principles and instrumentation, representation of spatial data in two dimensions, interpretation of maps and plans in three dimensions, surveying software, spreadsheets, and basic programming, introduction to fields of geomatics and integrated systems.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 4

Practicals: One practical per week, Wednesday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Class tests must be written and all practicals/assignments attended and submitted.

Assessment: Tests, Practical Assignments, 3-hour Examination (sub minimum 40%).

Second-Year Courses

APG2014S GEOMATICS II

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: APG1015F or CSC1015F or CSC1018F, MAM1003W or MAM1000W, APG1016S

Course outline:

Course Aims: This course builds further upon the introduction to co-ordinate systems provided in Geomatics I, and extends it to cover co-ordinate transformations, 3-D co-ordinate systems and time variations. The student is also introduced to the method of least squares as a means of solving over-determined systems of equations, with applications in co-ordinate transformations.

Course Content: Introduction to error theory and error propagation, method of least squares - parametric case, software applications in Geomatics, two-dimensional co-ordinate systems, motions of the Earth, time, satellite orbits, three-dimensional co-ordinate systems.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Completion of practical assignments to the satisfaction of the course convenor.

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments, 3-hour examination (sub minimum 40%).

APG2015F GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS I

Course co-ordinator(s): Mr S Motala

Entrance requirements: CSC1015F or CSC1018F or APG1015F, MAM1000W or MAM1003W or (MAM1004F with STA1000S), APG1016S

Course outline:

Course Aims: To provide knowledge and skills in the fundamental concepts of geographic information systems and remote sensing.

Course Content: GIS concepts, spatial relationships, topology, spatial and non-spatial data structures and algorithms, vector databases, raster data structures, data capture for raster GIS, spatial analysis using the raster data model, relational database management systems, data modelling, data display and presentation, theory of map projections.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Completion of practical assignments to the satisfaction of the course convenor and a test average of 35% or more.

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments, 3-hour examination (sub minimum 40%).

APG2018X GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS CAMP

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Smit

Entrance requirements: APG1016S, APG2015F or equivalent (co-requisite)

Course outline:

Course Aims: To consolidate knowledge and skills learnt in the course GIS I. To further teach problem solving skills in relation to practical GIS problems, and to equip the student with group work skills and engender tolerance of diversity.

Course Content: This 1-week camp is structured to teach problem solving skills in relation to practical spatial data management challenges in the GIS environment. Groups are made up of students who will work together in a simulated project environment. The camp covers the basic steps of GIS project planning with a focus in project layout, data acquisition, needs analysis, user requirements, system implementation and maintenance. The successful team will present a GIS solution to a spatial project, showing the project layout, data acquisition, needs analysis, user requirements.

DP requirements: Completion of practical assignments to the satisfaction of the course convenor

Assessment: Project 100%.

APG2026F ELEMENTARY SURVEYING

Course co-ordinator(s): Mr S Motala

Entrance requirements: STA1001F or MAM1003W, or MAM1004F and STA1000S, or equivalent

Course outline:

Course Aims: This course is designed to provide understanding of graphical and spatial concepts and skills of plane surveying for students of the built environment who are not intending to study higher courses in surveying. To teach problem solving skills in relation to practical surveying problems. To equip the student with group work and technical report writing skills.

Course Content: The content of the course includes the South African co-ordinate system; introduction to reduction of observations to a reference surface and projection to a mapping surface. Joins, Polars, error, traversing, theodolite and level instruments and their calibration, height determination by levelling and trigonometric heighting, distance measurement, tacheometry and map creation and interpretation, GIS as a tool for representation and analysis of spatial data, construction surveying: setting out of horizontal works and vertical alignment, calculation of volumes from plan, introduction to GPS as a data collection tool.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday 1st to 4th period or Tuesday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Completion of practical assignments to the satisfaction of the course convenor and a test average of 35% or more.

78 DEPARTMENT OF ARCHITECTURE, PLANNING AND GEOMATICS - DIVISION OF GEOMATICS

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments, 3-hour examination (sub minimum 40%).

Third-Year Courses

APG3011F GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS II

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Smit

Entrance requirements: CSC1015F or CSC1018F or APG1015F, APG2015F or equivalent, APG2018X

Course outline:

Course Aims: This course builds on the theory developed in the GIS I course. By the end of this course the student should have developed the knowledge and skills required to design and implement specialised GIS applications and an understanding of the theory, capabilities and limitations of various spatial analysis and optimisation techniques that are currently applied in the business of GIS. Furthermore the student should be aware of graphic design and presentation methods and have a grasp of the algorithms that are used in digital mapping. Certain legal and management issues are also addressed.

Course Content: multidimensional GIS and advanced data structures, spatial data infrastructures and metadata, distributed GIS, digital cartography, GIS application design and development using software engineering tools, GIS project management, spatial analysis, copyright and privacy issues.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 4

Practicals: One practical per week, Tuesday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Completion of practical assignments to the satisfaction of the course convenor and a test average of 35% or more.

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments, 3-hour examination (sub minimum 40%)

APG3012S GEOMATICS III

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr G Sithole

Entrance requirements: APG1015F or CSC1015F and APG1016S and MAM1000W or MAM1003W or (MAM1004F with STA1000S)

Course outline:

Course Aims: To provide the fundamental knowledge and skills in photogrammetry. To teach problem solving skills in relation to practical spatial data acquisition. To equip the student with group work skills.

Course Content: Basic mathematics of photogrammetry, stereo photogrammetry, orientation techniques, relative orientation, absolute orientation, collinearity, coplanarity, bundle adjustment, DLT, camera calibration, image measurement and co-ordinate refinement, introduction to digital photogrammetry. Aerotriangulation and close range network design. DTM production, rectification, ortho-rectification, mosaicing and automation in digital photogrammetry, laser scanning.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Completion of practical assignments with a minimum of 50% and a test average of 35% or more.

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments, 3-hour examination (sub minimum 40%)

APG3016C SURVEYING II

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Whittall

Entrance requirements: APG1016S and APG2015F.

Course outline:

Course Aims: To provide insight into the origins of the surveying discipline. To introduce some specialised instruments and methods used currently. To equip the student with a theoretical and working knowledge of satellite positioning methods. To further equip the student with group work, technical report writing, research, oral presentation, and problem solving skills, and to encourage critical enquiry.

Course Content: The history of surveying in southern Africa is self-taught through reading and assessed by essay; two lectures will be delivered on essay writing and related skills. Some additional surveying instrumentation/methods not mentioned in pre-requisite courses are introduced, and students are expected to research and present a 15-minute seminar on a surveying technique, interesting surveying equipment, or a surveying project. Surveying with the global positioning system is covered in detail and consists of 80% of the course.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3 third quarter only

Practicals: One practical per week, Wednesday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Completion of all assignments with an average of 50%; 35% average test mark.

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments/seminars, 1.5-hour examination (sub minimum 40%)

APG3020X SPATIAL DATA ANALYSIS PROJECT

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Smit

Entrance requirements: APG2015F or equivalent, APG3011F or equivalent (co-requisite)

Course outline:

Course Aims: To provide practical experience in processing, management, analysis and representation of spatial data.

Course Content: This will vary from project to project, but will be at an advanced level. The project may include (but is not limited to) acquisition, manipulation and management of spatial data, data analysis and representation, analysis of off-the-shelf software packages, and programming.

DP requirements: Completion of project to the satisfaction of the course convenor.

Assessment: Project 100%

APG4004A REMOTE SENSING

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Smit

Prerequisites: APG1015F or CSC1015F, APG1016S, APG2015F or equivalent

Course outline:

Course Aims: To broaden the knowledge of remotely sensed imagery and its use in spatial information systems. To equip the student with problem solving skills for application in remote sensing.

Course Content: The concept of computer processing of remote sensing images: image morphological operations, digital image processing, physical principles of remote sensing, spatial statistics prediction and simulation, classification and spatial sampling schemes. Remote Sensing and Decision Support Systems.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1 first quarter only

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday 6th to 8th period.

DP requirements: Completion of practical assignments to the satisfaction of the course convenor and a test mark of 35% or more.

Assessment: Tests, practical assignments, 1.5-hour examination (sub minimum 40%)

DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN BIOLOGY

The Department of Human Biology is part of the Faculty of Health Sciences. Physiology is only offered as a specialisation (SB013) for the BSc degree when taken in conjunction with another SB013 specialisation.

The Department is housed in the Anatomy Building, Medical School
Telephone (021) 406-6235
The Departmental abbreviation for Human Biology is HUB.

Professor and Head of Department

S H Kidson, MSc PhD *Wits* HDE (JCE)

Honorary Professors:

J L Jacobson, JD *Harvard* PhD *Harvard*

S W Jacobson, PhD *Harvard*

Hyman Goldberg Professor of Biomedical Engineering:

C L Vaughan, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes* PhD *Iowa*

Discovery Health Chair of Exercise and Sports Science:

T D Noakes, MBChB MD DSc *Cape Town* FACSMM

Professors:

E V Lambert, BA (Phys Ed)(Hons) *Rhodes* MSc *South Carolina* PhD *Cape Town*

G J Louw, DVSc *Pret*

A G Morris, BSc (WLU) PhD *Wits*

V A Russell, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Stell*

M P Schweltnus, MBChB *Wits* MSc MD *Cape Town* FACSMM

Associate Professors:

A N Bosch, BA (PhysEd)(Hons) MA *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

M R Collins, BSc (Hons) *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

E W Derman, MBChB *Pret* BSc Med (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* FACSMM

T S Douglas, BSc (Eng) *Cape Town* MS *Vanderbilt* PhD *Strathclyde*

L A Kellaway, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

M I Lambert, BA (Phys Ed)(Hons) *Rhodes* MSc *South Carolina* PhD *Cape Town*

E M Meintjies, BSc (Hons) MSc *Pietermaritzburg* PhD *Oregon State*

E Ojuka, BSc MEd (Makerere) PhD *Bingham Young*

Senior Lecturers:

R L Alexander, BSc MSc *Western Australia* PGD HED PhD *Cape Town*

D M Lang, Dr.rer.Nat *Konstanz*

M A J Poluta, BSc (Eng) *Witwatersrand*

S Prince, BSc (Hons) HDE PhD *Cape Town*

C P Slater, MBChB *Cape Town* FFRad(T) SA

L van der Merwe, Nat Dip Med *Tech Cape Town*, BSc (Med) Hons MSc *Cape Town*

C Warton, MBChB *Rhodes* LRCP MRCS *London*

Senior Lecturer and Chief Medical Officer:

D A Boonzaier, MBChB *Cape Town* DIC *London*

Senior Lecturer and Principal Biomedical Engineer:

M A J Poluta, BSc (Eng) *Wits*

Honorary Senior Lecturers:

J de Beer, MBChB MMed (Orthop) *Pretoria*

L Micklesfield, PhD *Cape Town*

M Patrick, PhD *Cape Town*

Lecturers:

E Badenhorst, BA(Hons) *Stell*

K Bugarith, BSc (Hons) *Natal* PhD *Washington State*

L Davids, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

G Gunston, MBChB *Cape Town*
 L R John, BSc (Eng) *Natal PhD Cape Town*

Honorary Lecturer:

E Nunziata LEE *Politecnico de Torino MBE Ohio State MSc London SHTM*

Principal Technical Officer:

B Dando Dip Med Tech

Chief Technical and Scientific Officers:

B Möhr, BSc *Cape Town*

T Wiggins, Dip Med Tech BSc(Med)(Hons) *Cape Town*

C Harris, NTC (Tool, Jig and Die making) *Athlone Tech College*

G de Bie, BSc *Rhodes BSc(Hons) UOFS*

Senior Technical and Scientific Officers:

A M Mkize, BSc Zululand M.Tech *ML Sultan Technicon*

M P Phillips, BSc *Cape Town*

Technical Officers:

I Fakier, ND Electrical Eng *CPUT*

N Kariem, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town*

M Peterson, Dip Med Tech BTech *CPUT*

Undergraduate Courses

Second-Year Courses

HUB2019F INTRODUCTION TO HUMAN BIOLOGY

NOTE: Entrance is limited to 60 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor E Ojuka

Entrance requirements: CEM1000W (or equivalent), BIO1000F

Course outline:

This course is an introduction to human anatomy and the basics of physiology. The first five weeks examine the basics of cells and tissues and cell proliferation, along with gross and histological studies and physiology of the integumentary, musculo-skeletal system, cardio-vascular system, GIT, reproductive, urinary and nervous systems. The course includes the study of homeostasis, the chemistry of life, membranes, electrophysiology, nutrition and metabolism.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1 Fridays may be used for tutorials, guest lectures and tests.

Practicals: One per week, Mondays or Tuesdays

DP requirements: Attendance at all practicals, 40% average in class tests and an average of 50% for all assignments

Assessment: Class tests count 30%; assignments count 5%; practicals count 15%; examinations (theory and practical) count 50%. An oral examination may be required in the case of selected students.

HUB2021S HUMAN BIOLOGY : MAINTENANCE & INTEGRATION

NOTE: Entrance is limited to 60 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr R Alexander

Entrance requirements: HUB2019F, CEM1000W (or equivalent)

Course outline:

The course contains lectures and tutorials on the physiology, anatomy and histology of organ systems in the human body including the endocrine, nervous, reproductive, cardio respiratory, immune and excretory systems. In practical sessions, students work in small sessions to a) study the

82 DEPARTMENT OF HUMAN BIOLOGY

electrical, mechanical and chemical events in the contraction of skeletal and cardiac muscles using the oscilloscope and other electronic equipment, b) learn various principles of measuring the activities and concentration of enzymes and hormones c) study anatomical parts of the human body from cadavers and histological sections under a microscope.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1 Fridays may be used for tutorials, guest lectures and tests.

Practicals: One per week, 14h00-17h00 Mondays or Tuesdays.

DP requirements: Attendance at all practicals, 40% average in class tests and an average of 50% for all assignments

Assessment: Class tests count 30%; assignments count 5%; practicals count 15%; examinations (theory and practical) count 50%. An oral examination may be required in the case of selected students.

Third-Year Courses

HUB3006F GENERAL & APPLIED PHYSIOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor A Bosch

Entrance requirements: HUB2021S, CEM1000W (or equivalent)

Course outline:

The semester theme is "Living, working and playing". Topics dealt with in detail include: metabolism and homeostasis, cellular homeostasis, nutrition and metabolism, obesity and diabetes, muscle physiology, cardio-respiratory physiology, exercise physiology, thermoregulation, physiology in extreme environments.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Practicals: One practical per week, 14h00-17h00 Wednesdays or Thursdays. The nature of the practicals will sometimes require work outside of these formal times.

DP requirements: Attendance at all practicals, 40% average in class tests and an average of 50% for all assignments

Assessment: Class tests count 30%; assignments count 5%; practicals count 15%; examinations (written and practical) count 50%. An oral examination may be required in the case of selected students.

NOTE: A student may not count more than three full courses or the equivalent from the set HUB2019F and HUB2013S, HUB3006F, HUB3007S, HUB3002S and RAY2001W towards the senior courses required for the degree.

HUB3007S BIOPHYSICS & NEUROPHYSIOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor V A Russell

Entrance requirements: HUB2021S, CEM1000W (or equivalent)

Course outline:

Advanced lectures on topics on neuroscience, such as: electrophysiological techniques, membrane physiology, neural communication, reticular formation, motor systems, vision, pain, hypothalamus, biorhythms, learning and memory, development of nervous system imaging.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Practicals: One practical per week, 14h00-17h00 Wednesdays or Thursdays. The nature of the practicals will sometimes require work outside of these formal times.

DP requirements: Attendance at all practicals, 40% average in class tests and an average of 50% for all assignments.

Assessment: Class tests count 30%; assignments count 5%; practicals count 15%; examinations (theory and practical) count 50%. An oral examination may be required in the case of selected students.

NOTE: A student may not count more than three full courses or the equivalent from the set HUB2019F and HUB2021S, HUB3006F, HUB3007S, HUB3002S and RAY2001W towards the senior courses required for the degree.

Postgraduate Courses

HUB4040W BSc (Med) (HONS) IN PHYSIOLOGY

See Faculty of Health Sciences Handbook.

HUB4000W BSc (Med) (HONS) IN CELL BIOLOGY

See Faculty of Health Sciences Handbook.

HUB4002W BSc (Med) (HONS) IN APPLIED ANATOMY

See Faculty of Health Sciences Handbook.

HUB4001W BSc (Med) (HONS) IN BIOLOGICAL ANTHROPOLOGY

See Faculty of Health Sciences Handbook.

HUB4041W BSc (Med) (HONS) IN EXERCISE SCIENCE

See Faculty of Health Sciences Handbook.

HUB5004W MSc (Med) IN PHYSIOLOGY

Entrance requirements: HUB4040W BSc (Hons) in Physiology

Course outline:

A research project must be carried out in the field of physiology and the results presented in the form of a dissertation. In addition, an oral examination may be required.

General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

HUB6001W PhD (Med) IN PHYSIOLOGY

Course outline:

Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies. The Department provides facilities for research and supervision in the field of Physiology.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

The Department is housed in the Mathematics Building, 7 University Avenue
Telephone (021) 650-3191 Fax (021) 650-2334. The website address is <http://www.mth.uct.ac.za>
The Departmental abbreviation for Mathematics and Applied Mathematics is MAM.

Associate Professor and Head of Department:

C R A Gilmour, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Emeritus Distinguished Professor of Complex Systems:

G F R Ellis, BSc (Hons) BCom (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Cantab* DSc (hc) *Natal, Haverford*

Emeritus Professors:

R I Becker, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *MIT*

G C L Brümmer, MSc *Stell* Docts Math *Amsterdam* PhD *Cape Town*

K A Hardie, MSc *Natal* PhD *Cantab*

J H Webb, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Cantab*

Emeritus Associate Professor:

R W Cross, MA *St Andrews* PhD *London* DSc *London*

South African Research Chair in Computational Mechanics:

B D Reddy, BSc(Eng) *Cape Town*, PhD *Cantab* FRSSAf

Professors:

IV Barashenkov, MSc *Moscow* PhD *Dubna*

D S Butterworth, MSc *Cape Town* PhD *London*

P K S Dunsby, BSc PhD *London*

G Janelidze, MSc PhD *Tbilisi Georgia* DSc *St Petersburg*

H P A Künzi, MSc PhD *Berne*

Visiting Professor and Principal Research Officer:

P A Whitelock, PhD *London*

Associate Professors:

B A Bassett, MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Trieste*

V Brattka, PhD *Hagen, Germany*

C W Hellaby, BSc (Hons) *St Andrews* MSc PhD *Queen's (Ontario)*

A B Ianovsky, MSc *Sofia* PhD *Dubna*

T G Myers, BSc (Hons) *Leicester* PhD *Leeds*

Honorary Research Associate:

F D Richardson, BSc (Agric) *Nottingham* PhD *London* PhD *Cape Town*

Senior Lecturers:

P V Bruyns, MA Dphil *Oxon* LRSM MSc *Cape Town*

C A Clarkson, BSc (Hons) *Edinburgh* PhD *Glasgow*

J J Conradie, MSc *Stell* PhD *Cantab*

D T Gay, AB *Harvard* PhD *Berkeley*

F Ebobisse Bille, PhD *Pisa*

J L Frith, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

K R Hughes, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* PhD *Warwick*

H de G Laurie, BA *Stell* BSc *Unisa* BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

J Murugan, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

A N Rynhoud, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town*

A Schauerte, BSc (Hons) *Natal* MSc *Cape Town* PhD *McMaster*

Lecturers:

NV Alexeeva, MSc *Sofia* PhD *Cape Town*

M L Archibald, MSc PhD *Wits*

K le Roux, BA(Hons) *Natal* MPhil *Cape Town*

T Chinyoka, MSc *Zimbabwe* PhD *Virginia Tech*

E Fredericks, BSc (Hons) MSc *Wits*
 V Frith, MSc HDE *Cape Town* (CHED)
 K T P Rafel, BSc (Hons) *Wits* MSc *Cape Town*
 N R C Robertson, MSc PhD *Cape Town*
 D Solomons, MSc PhD *Cape Town*
 H Spakowski, PhD *Heinrich-Heine Germany*
 C S Swart, MSc *Natal* MSc PhD *London*
 A Weltman, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Columbia*

Research Officers:

A D G Brandao, BSc *Wits* MSc PhD *Cape Town*
 C Cunningham, PhD *Imperial College, London*
 S J Holloway, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Principal Technical Officer:

J M Rolfe, BSc (Eng) *Cape Town*

Administrative Manager:

H S Leslie, BA (Hons) *UPE*

Administrative Assistants:

B B Cloete
 D L Loureiro
 N Walker
 A Willis-Thomas
 C D Sher

Administrative & Research Assistant:

M Cooke

Senior Secretaries:

Z Hartley

Departmental Assistants:

N Minnie
 J M Steenveld

RESEARCH IN MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

Research activities in the Department cover the spectrum of mathematics, and there are groups which are active in areas as diverse as Topology, Analysis, Logic and Formal Aspects of Computer Science, General Relativity and Cosmology, Biological Modelling, and Continuum Mechanics. Fields of research of staff members include:

Functional Analysis, Operator Theory (J J Conradie, R W Cross, F Ebobisse, N R C Robertson, J H Webb, D L Wilcox)
 Financial Mathematics (R Becker)
 Cryptography (C S Swart, H Spakowski)
 Dynamical Systems (A B Ianovsky)
 General Relativity and Cosmology (B A Bassett, C A Clarkson, P K S Dunsby, G F R Ellis, C W Hellaby, J Murugan, D Solomons, A Weltman)
 Group Theory, Universal Algebra, Set Theory and Model Theory (P V Bruyns, H P A Künzi)
 Industrial Mathematics (H de G Laurie, T G Myers)
 Logic, Formal Aspects of Computer Science and Theory of Algorithms (V Brattka, H Spakowski)
 Low Dimensional Geometry and Topology (D T Gay)
 Marine Population Dynamics (A Brandao, D S Butterworth, C Cunningham, S J Holloway)
 Mathematical Ecology (H de G Laurie)
 Mathematics Education (K Bennie, J J Conradie, G F R Ellis, J L Frith, V Frith, C R A Gilmour, H de G Laurie, K Rafel, A N Rynhoud, J H Webb)
 Nonlinear Dynamics and Mathematical Physics (I V Barashenkov, N V Alexeeva)
 Number Theory, K-Theory and Higher Forms, Non-Commutative Geometry and Mechanics (K R

Hughes, C S Swart)

Partial Differential Equations of Mechanics, Numerical Analysis, Dynamical Systems (B D Reddy)

Combinatorics, Analysis of Algorithms (M L Archibald)

Computational Fluid Dynamics (T Chinyoka)

Stochastic Ordinary Differential Equations (E Fredericks)

Rangeland Systems Modelling (F D Richardson)

National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme (B A Bassett, C A Clarkson, P K S Dunsby, G F R Ellis, C W Hellaby, J Murugan, P A Whitelock, D Solomons, A Weltman)

Topology and Category Theory (J L Frith, C R A Gilmour, K A Hardie, G Janelidze, H P A Künzi, A Schauerte, G C L Brümmer)

String Theory and Quantum Gravity (J Murugan, A Weltman)

Category Theory (G Janelidze)

Further information may be found in the Department's website at <http://www.mth.uct.ac.za>.

Courses Offered by the Department

For convenience and ease of reference, the undergraduate courses have been grouped separately under Applied Mathematics and Mathematics. All postgraduate courses offered by the Department are listed together. Most course administrative information, eg. booklists, lecture/tutorial timetables, test details etc, can be found on the Departmental website under "Undergraduate courses" and "Postgraduate courses".

1. All students registered for a course in the Department will be required to attend the lectures and tutorial classes prescribed for that course.
2. Most syllabuses indicate the contents of the various courses as recently given. All courses are subject to revision without advance notice.
3. Courses for Engineering and Commerce Faculty students are offered by the Department. See relevant Handbooks.
4. In exceptional cases, the usual entrance requirements may be waived with the special permission of the Head of Department.

Undergraduate Courses in Applied Mathematics

Recommended course selection

The following are recommended course selections emphasising particular interests:

Mathematical Modelling/Mechanics:

MAM1043H, MAM1044H, MAM2046W, MAM3040W with courses in Mathematics, Oceanography, Statistics and Computer Science.

Mathematical Physics:

MAM1043H, MAM1044H, MAM2046W, MAM3040W with courses in Physics, Astronomy and Mathematics.

Biomathematics and Life Sciences:

MAM1043H, MAM1044H, STA1006S, MAM2046W, MAM2043S, MAM3042H, MAM3041H (modules 3ND and 3AN) with courses in the Life Sciences or Environmental & Geographical Science.

First-Year Courses in Applied Mathematics

The Mathematics Hot Seat in Room 210 on level 2 in the Mathematics Building is open for several hours every day and students in the courses MAM1042S, MAM1043H and MAM1044H are encouraged to go there for help with their mathematics problems.

MAM1043H MODELLING & APPLIED COMPUTING

NOTE: This course can be taken in conjunction with MAM1044H because lectures are arranged so that this is possible.

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM1000W (co-requisite), or already have an equivalent knowledge of Mathematics.

Course outline:

An introduction to Applied Mathematics and Mathematical Modelling including approximations and estimation theory; numerical methods, dynamical systems and modelling and simulation of discrete and continuous processes with matlab or Octave. Exposure to research methodology and mathematical communication.

Lectures: First Semester: 2nd period Monday, Wednesday, Friday. Second Semester: 2nd period Tuesday, Thursday

Practicals: One practical every second week, Friday, 6th and 7th periods.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more.

Assessment: Class record counts 40%; one no longer than 3-hour paper written in October/November makes up the balance.

MAM1044H DYNAMICS

NOTE: This course can be taken in conjunction with MAM1043H because lectures are arranged so that this is possible.

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM1000W (co-requisite), or already have an equivalent knowledge of Mathematics.

Course outline:

A systematic introduction to the elements of mechanics; kinematics in three dimensions. Newton's laws of motion, models of forces (friction, elastic springs, fluid resistance). Conservation of energy and momentum. Simple systems of particles, including brief introduction to rigid systems. Orbital Mechanics with applications to the planning of space missions to the outer planets.

Lectures: First semester: 2nd period Tuesday, Thursday. Second semester: 2nd period Monday, Wednesday, Friday.

Practicals: One practical every second week, Friday, 6th and 7th periods.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more.

Assessment: Class record counts up to 33%; one no longer than 3-hour paper written in October/November makes up the balance.

Second-Year Courses in Applied Mathematics

MAM2043S INTRODUCTION TO BIOLOGICAL MODELLING

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM1004F or MAM1004H or MAM1005H

Course outline:

Developing simple mathematical models useful to biologists. Models of growth, competition, predation and sustainable harvesting. Implementing models using the computer. Elementary statistics.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Friday, 6th and 7th periods, plus an alternative day as chosen by class.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class tests.

Assessment: Class record counts 35%; 2-hour paper written in October/November counts 65%.

MAM2046W APPLIED MATHEMATICS II**Course co-ordinator(s):** To be advised**Entrance requirements:** MAM1043H, MAM1044H and MAM1000W**Co-requisites:** Modules 2LA and 2AC of MAM2000W/2004H**Course outline:**

The course consists of four 30-lecture modules. Modules 2OD and 2MM are offered in the first semester and modules 2BP and 2NA in the second semester.

Syllabuses:

2NA NUMERICAL ANALYSIS (coded as MAM2053S for Engineering students)

Solutions to non-linear equations and rates of convergence. Direct and iterative methods for solving linear systems, pivoting strategies, matrix factorization, norms, conditioning. Solutions to initial value problems including higher order ordinary differential equations. Interpolation and approximation theory, splines, discrete and continuous least squares. Numerical differentiation and integration. Error analysis and control.

2OD ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

First order linear and nonlinear equations; existence and uniqueness of solutions. Linear equations of the n-th order and systems of n linear first order equations. Nonhomogeneous linear equations and systems; variation of parameters; qualitative theory of nonlinear equations; phase plane analysis; externally and parametrically driven oscillators; resonances; application to the theory of nonlinear vibrations. Calculus of variations.

2BP BOUNDARY-VALUE PROBLEMS (coded as MAM2050S for Engineering students)

Boundary-value problems, Green's functions, eigenvalue problems. Variational calculus, applications to Lagrangean and Hamiltonian mechanics. Diffusion, Laplace's and wave equation. Solution by separation of variables.

2MM INTRODUCTION TO MATHEMATICAL MODELLING (coded as MAM2044F for Engineering students)

Formulation, construction and interpretation of mathematical models for problems in the natural and life sciences. Modelling with first and second order differential equations. Introduction to population modelling, heat transfer and fluid flow. Analytical, qualitative and numerical methods and solutions. Basic use of the Laplace transform.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Lectures:	3	3	3	3	3

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday, 14h00-16h00.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more is required in each module of the course.

Assessment: For each module the year mark counts 30% and one no longer than 2-hour examination paper counts 70%.

MAM2047H APPLIED MATHEMATICS 2047**Course co-ordinator(s):** To be advised**Entrance requirements:** MAM1043H, MAM1044H and MAM1000W**Co-requisites:** Modules 2LA and 2AC of MAM2000W/2004H**Course outline:**

This half-course consists of two modules from MAM2046W, one of which should be the module 2OD.

Lectures: Depending on modules chosen, as for MAM2046W.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday, 14h00-16h00.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more is required in each module of the course.

Assessment: Please refer to the MAM2046W examination requirement entry for the class record and exam weighting for each module.

MAM2048H APPLIED MATHEMATICS 2048**Course co-ordinator(s):** To be advised**Entrance requirements:** MAM2047H**Course outline:**

This course is for students who have already obtained credit for MAM2047H. It consists of two modules of MAM2046W which were not taken as MAM2047H. A student who takes both MAM2047H and MAM2048H may count the combination as equivalent to MAM2046W.

Lectures: Depending on modules chosen, as for MAM2046W.**Tutorials:** One tutorial per week, Thursday, 14h00-16h00.**DP requirements:** A class record of 30% or more is required in each module of the course.**Assessment:** Please refer to the MAM2046W examination requirement entry for the class record and exam weighting for each module.

MAM2052F QUANTITATIVE SKILLS FOR SCIENTISTS**Course co-ordinator(s):** To be advised**Entrance requirements:** MAM1004F or MAM1004H or MAM1005H or MAM1000W**Course outline:**

This course may be taken for credit by students registered in one of the programmes SB012 or SB013. A student from any other programme who wishes to take MAM2052F for credit will need the approval of the programme convenor. The course will: 1. develop an ability to quantitatively analyse problems arising in the chemical, Earth and environmental sciences; 2. illustrate the great utility of mathematical models to provide answers to key chemical, geological and environmental problems; 3. develop an appreciation of the diversity of mathematical approaches potentially useful in the chemical, geological and environmental sciences. An important component of the course will be the use of computers and information technology.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Tutorials: Friday 3rd or Thursday 5th period.**DP requirements:** A class record of 35% or more.**Assessment:** Class record counts up to 40%; one no longer than 2-hour paper written in June makes up the balance.

Third-Year Courses in Applied Mathematics

MAM3040W APPLIED MATHEMATICS III**Course co-ordinator(s):** To be advised**Entrance requirements:** MAM2046W or MAM2047H and MAM2048H; and MAM2000W**Course outline:**

A total of five 30-lecture modules is offered, four of which make up MAM3040W. The module 3MP constitutes core (compulsory) material while the other three modules can be chosen from 3ND, 3FD, 3AN and 3GR. Modules 3AN and 3ND will be offered in the first semester, and modules 3FD, 3GR and 3MP in the second semester.

Syllabuses:

3MP METHODS OF MATHEMATICAL PHYSICS (coded as MAM3043S for Engineering students)

The Fourier-transform solution of linear PDEs on the line. The long-term asymptotic behaviour of solutions: the methods of Laplace, stationary phase and steepest descents. Nonlinear waves: the method of characteristics; the effect of dissipation; the Cole-Hopf transform for the Burgers equation; travelling fronts for the KPP equation. The effect of dispersion: KdV and nonlinear Schroedinger equation. Elliptic integrals and elliptic functions; dark and bright solitons; kinks and

90 DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

breathers for the sine-Gordon equation. Multisoliton solutions: the Hirota method and Bäcklund transformations.

3ND NONLINEAR DYNAMICS (coded as MAM3052F for Engineering students)

Fixed points, bifurcations, phase portraits. Conservative and reversible systems. Index theory, Poincaré-Bendixson theorem, Liénard systems, relaxation oscillators. Hopf bifurcations, quasiperiodicity and Poincaré maps. Applications to oscillating chemical reactions and Josephson junctions. Chaos on a strange attractor, Lorentz map, logistic map, Hénon map, Lyapunov exponents. Fractals.

3AN ADVANCED NUMERICAL METHODS (coded as MAM3050F for Engineering Students).

Advanced methods for ODEs boundary value problems, differential eigenvalue problems. Numerical solution of PDEs by the methods of finite differences, finite elements and spectral methods.

3GR INTRODUCTION TO GENERAL RELATIVITY (coded as MAM3049S for Engineering students) *Note: This module is also available to interested parties on the Internet. Further details may be obtained from the website <http://www.mth.uct.ac.za/omei/gr>.*

Christoffel relations, geodesics, curvature, the Riemann tensor. The energy-momentum tensor in electrodynamics and fluid dynamics. Principle of equivalence, Einstein's field equations. Black holes, gravitational waves.

3FD FLUID DYNAMICS (coded as MAM3054S for Engineering students)

Description of fluids, equations of fluid flow for simple fluids, analytical techniques. Applications.

Period

Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	3	3	3	3	3
-----------	---	---	---	---	---

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday, 6th and 7th periods.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more is required in each module of the course.

Assessment: For modules 3GR and 3FD the year mark counts 25% and the examination counts 75%. For modules 3MP, 3AN and 3ND, the year mark counts 35% and the examination counts 65%. The papers for module 3AN and 3ND are written in June and modules 3FD, 3GR and 3MP are written in October/November. All papers are no longer than 2 hours, except 3GR which is no longer than 3 hours.

MAM3041H APPLIED MATHEMATICS III (half course)

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM2000W and either MAM2046W or both MAM2047H and MAM2048H.

Course outline:

This half course consists of two modules of MAM3040W, at least one of which should be 3MP.

Lectures: Depending on modules chosen, as for MAM3040W.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday, 6th and 7th periods.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more is required in each module of the course.

Assessment: Please refer to the MAM3040W examination requirements entry for the class record and exam weighting for each module.

MAM3042H FURTHER BIOLOGICAL MODELLING

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM2043S

Course outline:

Biological modelling concepts introduced in MAM2043S are extended: age-structured models including Leslie matrices, bioeconomic harvesting theory, diffusion, statistical power testing, introduction to generalised linear models and numerical methods.

Lectures: Average of two and a half per week, to be arranged.

Tutorials: One every two to three weeks, to be arranged.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more.

Assessment: Class record counts 35%; 2-hour paper written in October/November counts 65%.

MAM3048H APPLIED MATHEMATICS 3048

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM3041H

Course outline:

This course is for students who have already obtained credit for MAM3041H. It consists of two modules of MAM3040W which were not taken as MAM3041H and which, together with MAM3041H, would constitute the contents of MAM3040W. A student who takes both MAM3041H and MAM3048H may count the combination as equivalent to MAM3040W.

Lectures: Depending on modules chosen, as for MAM3040W.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday, 6th and 7th period.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more is required in each module of the course.

Assessment: Please refer to the MAM3040W examination requirements for the class record and exam weighting for each module.

Undergraduate Courses in Mathematics

First-Year Courses in Mathematics

One full course in Mathematics at first-year level is offered in the Science Faculty, MAM1000W. (The courses MAM1010 and MAM1012 are intended for Business Science students and the full course MAM1003W for Engineering students. Details of these can be found in the Handbooks for the Faculties of Commerce and Engineering and the Built Environment respectively). Credit equivalent to MAM1000W can be obtained by passing MAM1005H and MAM1006H. In special cases MAM1004F or MAM1004H may be taken in place of MAM1005H; detailed rules are given under the entry for MAM1006H.

No student may register for more than one of MAM1000W, MAM1004F, MAM1004H, MAM1005H and MAM1006H simultaneously.

The course STA1001F/S carries no credit in the Faculty of Science. Credit will not be given for more than one of MAM1004F, MAM1004H and MAM1005H. Credit for any first-year half course in Mathematics falls away on obtaining credit for MAM1000W.

The Mathematics Hot Seat in Room 210 on level 2 in the Mathematics Building is open for several hours every day and students in the courses MAM1000W, MAM1004F, MAM1005H and MAM1006H are encouraged to go there for help with their mathematics problems.

MAM1000W MATHEMATICS I

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: Registration for MAM1000W in February will be provisional, and will only be confirmed at the beginning of the second quarter. For such provisional registration, the minimum requirement is a pass in Mathematics with an achievement rating of at least 5 for students with a National Senior Certificate, or a pass in Mathematics with at least 50% at the Higher Grade for students who matriculated with a Senior Certificate, or at least a D symbol at A-level. Students who have not reached a satisfactory level (to be defined at the beginning of the course) at the end of the first quarter will have their provisional registration for MAM1000W cancelled, but will be allowed to decant to MAM1005H at the beginning of the second quarter.

Course outline:

Differential and integral calculus of functions of one variable, differential equations, partial derivatives, vector geometry, matrix algebra, complex numbers, Taylor series.

Lectures: Five lectures per week, Monday to Friday, 1st or 3rd period.

92 DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

Tutorials: One 2-hour tutorial per week

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% for class tests and satisfactory tutorial work.

Assessment: Year mark counts 33.3%; two no longer than 3-hour papers written in October/November make up the balance.

MAM1004F MATHEMATICS 1004

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: The normal minimum requirement is a pass in Mathematics with an achievement rating of at least 4 for students with a National Senior Certificate, or a pass in Mathematics at the Higher Grade, or at least an A symbol at the Standard Grade, for students who matriculated with a Senior Certificate, or at least an E symbol at A-level. Students who have not reached a satisfactory level (to be defined at the beginning of the course) at the end of the first quarter will have their provisional registration for MAM1004F cancelled, but will be allowed to decant to MAM1004H (see below) at the beginning of the second quarter. (Students who have been admitted to MAM1004F without a background of Higher Grade Mathematics are expected to make up the difference between the syllabuses for themselves.)

Course outline:

The course provides mathematics for applications, particularly in the life and earth sciences. Syllabus: Functions and graphs. Straight lines, power functions, polynomials, exponential and logarithmic functions, trigonometric functions (radians). Discrete-time dynamical systems. Stability and equilibria. Rates of change. Limits, derivatives. Maxima and minima. Concavity. Asymptotes and curve sketching. Newton's Method. Taylor Polynomials. Antiderivatives and integrals. Mathematical modelling. Separable and linear differential equations.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Tutorials: One per week, Monday or Wednesday afternoon, 14h00-16h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class tests, and at least 80% attendance at tutorials.

Assessment: Year mark counts up to 40%; one no longer than 3-hour paper written in June makes up the balance.

MAM1004H MATHEMATICS 1004

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: For students with a National Senior Certificate, a pass in Mathematics with an achievement rating of at least 4; for students who matriculated with Senior Certificate, a pass in Mathematics at the Higher Grade or at least an A symbol at the Standard Grade; or at least an E symbol at A-level. Students whose provisional registration for MAM1004F (see above) has been cancelled will be allowed to register for MAM1004H at the beginning of the second quarter.

Course outline:

This course is intended for students who would otherwise register for MAM1004F, but who are not likely to pass that course by the end of the first semester. The syllabus is the same as for MAM1004F, but is spread over two semesters.

Lectures: Three lectures per week, days to be arranged, in Meridian.

Tutorials: By arrangement.

DP requirements: As for MAM1004F.

Assessment: Year mark counts up to 40%; one no longer than 3-hour paper written in October/November makes up the balance.

MAM1005H MATHEMATICS 1005

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: For students with a National Senior Certificate, a pass in Mathematics

with an achievement rating of at least 4; for students who matriculated with Senior Certificate, a pass in Mathematics at the Higher Grade or at least an A symbol at the Standard Grade, or at least an E symbol at A-level. All students admitted to the General Entry Programme in Science must register for MAM1005H. In addition, students attending the full-year courses in Mathematics may be placed into MAM1005H at the end of the first quarter. Other students who meet the entrance requirements will be permitted to register for MAM1005H as long as there is capacity in the course, and such students must have their registration approved by the relevant Student Advisor.

Course outline:

Differential and integral calculus of functions of one variable.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Tutorials: Friday, 1st period. **Workshops:** Monday, 6th and 7th period.

DP requirements: Minimum of 35% for class record and satisfactory attendance at all lectures, workshops and tutorials.

Assessment: Year mark counts up to 40%; one 2-hour paper written in October/November makes up the balance.

MAM1006H MATHEMATICS 1006

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM1005H or a pass with at least 65% in MAM1004F or MAM1004H. Students who have passed MAM1004F or MAM1004H with less than 65% and who wish to register for MAM1006H will be required to write and pass the examination paper for MAM1005H in November or the supplementary examination paper in January before they are allowed to register for MAM1006H. Such students are required to inform the course co-ordinator for MAM1005H by 1 September or 1 December, respectively, of their intention to write the examination and at the same time obtain information about the reading to be done as preparation for the examination.

Course outline:

The course consists of those topics in the MAM1000W syllabus that were not covered in MAM1005H in the previous year.

Lectures: First period, three days per week.

Tutorials: First period, two days per week.

DP requirements: Minimum of 35% in class tests and satisfactory attendance at lectures and tutorials.

Assessment: Year mark counts up to 40%; one 2-hour paper written in October/November makes up the balance.

Second-Year Courses in Mathematics

MAM2000W MATHEMATICS II

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM1000W or equivalent.

Course outline:

1. The course consists of four modules chosen from the list below.
2. The module 2LA is compulsory.
3. All students must take at least one of the modules 2IA or 2RA. Students who intend to proceed to MAM3000W should do both these modules.
4. Credit will not be given for module 2AC if a student has completed MAM2046W in 2003 or earlier.
5. Credit will not be given for module 2DE if a student has completed MAM2046W or MAM2047H or is currently registered for MAM2046W or MAM2047H.

94 DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

6. The modules offered in any one year may differ from those listed below. Students should consult the departmental handout for a list of modules offered and approved combinations.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5 with options in 4th period.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-16h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record.

Assessment: Year mark counts up to 40%; the examination mark makes up the balance. The examination consists of four papers of up to 2 hours each. First semester modules will be examined in June and second semester modules in October/November.

MAM2001H, MAM2004H and MAM2002S MATHEMATICS 2001, 2004 & 2002

MAM2001H is a half-course in Mathematics at second-year level. It is the minimum requirement for students in the Computer Science stream of the Information Technology programme, but such students are encouraged to register for the full course MAM2000W instead.

MAM2004H is a half-course in Mathematics at second-year level. It is also the minimum co-requisite for MAM2046W and for PHY2014F, in which case modules 2LA and 2AC are compulsory. MAM2002S is a half-course in Mathematics at second-year level. It is usually taken by students who are doing it in addition to either MAM2000W or MAM2004H.

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM1000W (or equivalent).

Course outline:

Each half course consists of two modules. Students in MAM2001H must take modules 2DS and 2FM. A student may register for a half course in the same year as MAM2000W or in a subsequent year.

Lectures: For MAM2001H: 4th period Monday to Friday. For MAM2004H, MAM2002S: 5th period Monday to Friday, with some modules in 4th period; all students must have 5th period free.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-16h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record.

Assessment: As for MAM2000W except that the examination consists of two papers of up to 2 hours each.

Modules for Second-Year Courses

		Semester	Prerequisites
2AC	Advanced Calculus	1	-
2DE	Differential Equations	2	Modules 2AC and 2LA
2DS	Discrete Structures	1	-
2FM	Fourier Methods	2	-
2IA	Introductory Algebra	2	Module 2LA
2LA	Linear Algebra	1	-
2RA	Real Analysis	2	-

Syllabuses

2AC ADVANCED CALCULUS Differentiable functions, independence of order of repeated derivatives, chain rule, Taylor's theorem, maxima and minima, Lagrange multipliers. Curves and surfaces in three dimensions, change of coordinates, spherical and cylindrical coordinates. Line integrals, surface integrals. Stokes' theorem. Green's theorem, divergence theorem.

2DE DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS: This module is aimed at Actuarial and Business Science students. A selection from the following topics will be covered: First order difference equations. Second order difference equations with constant coefficients. Systems of first order difference equations. Linear differential equations and systems with constant coefficients. Laplace transforms and applications. Nonlinear equations and phase plane analysis. Parabolic partial differential equations, separation of variables, two point boundary value problems. Option pricing by the Black-

Scholes equation. Stochastic Differential Equations. All topics will have applications to economics and finance.

2DS DISCRETE STRUCTURES: Introduction to informal logic; use of truth tables, quantifiers. Methods of proof (contradiction, induction). Informal set theory, relations, equivalences, partitions, partial orders. Boolean algebras. Functions, cardinality. Recurrence relations. Introduction to graph theory.

2FM FOURIER METHODS: Signals and systems. Fourier series. Analysis of periodic Fourier series. Discrete frequency spectra. Fourier transforms, convolution, continuous spectra. Applications. Discrete and Fast Fourier Transforms.

2IA INTRODUCTORY ALGEBRA: Further Linear Algebra (projections, direct sums, spectral theorem, singular value decomposition, Cayley-Hamilton theorem). Introduction to groups, rings and fields. Applications to number theory, coding theory and geometry.

2LA LINEAR ALGEBRA Matrices, Gauss reduction, invertibility. Vector spaces, linear independence, spans, bases, row space, column space, null space. Linear maps. Eigenvectors and eigenvalues with applications. Inner product spaces, orthogonality.

2RA REAL ANALYSIS Sequences, subsequences, Cauchy sequences, completeness of the real numbers. Series: convergence, absolute convergence and tests for convergence. Continuity and differentiability of functions. Taylor series and indeterminate forms. Sequences and series of functions, uniform convergence, power series.

Third-Year Courses in Mathematics

MAM3000W MATHEMATICS III

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM2000W.

Course outline:

1. MAM3000W is the full-year major course for the BSc degree. Credit for MAM3000W is obtained by selecting an approved combination of four modules from those listed below. Such a selection must include at least one of the modules 3AL or 3MS. A student will not be given credit for MAM3000W without having completed the modules 2RA Real Analysis and 2IA Introductory Algebra. Students who did not take both these modules for MAM2000W will be allowed to take one of them as one of the modules for MAM3000W.
2. The modules offered in any one year may differ from those listed below. Each module consists of thirty lectures and twelve tutorials.
3. A written project and short oral presentation will be a compulsory component of the course.
4. Students who are given permission to do a second-year module as part of MAM3000W might be required to do additional reading and be examined on it.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5 with options in 4th period.

Tutorials: Friday, 14h00-17h00, with tutorials for some modules at other times to be arranged.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more.

Assessment: Year mark counts up to 40%; the examination mark, project and test on additional reading, where applicable, account for the balance. The examination consists of four papers of up to 2 hours each. First-semester modules will be examined in June and second-semester modules in October/November.

MAM3001W MATHEMATICS 3001

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM2000W.

Course outline:

The modules offered are those for MAM3000W. A second-year module may be selected with the

96 DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

course co-ordinator's approval. MAM3001W is a third-year senior course for students selecting four modules which do not satisfy the requirements for the major course MAM3000W. No project is required for this course.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5 with options in 4th period.

Tutorials: Friday, 14h00-17h00, with tutorials for some modules at other times to be arranged.

DP requirements: A class record of 30% or more.

Assessment: Year mark counts up to 40%; the examination mark account for the balance. The examination consists of four papers of up to 2 hours each. First-semester modules will be examined in June and second-semester modules in October/November.

MAM3002H and MAM3003S MATHEMATICS 3002 & MATHEMATICS 3003

MAM3002H is a half course for students who register at the beginning of the year. MAM3003S is a half course for those who register in the second semester, or those who have already obtained credit for MAM3002H.

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM2000W.

Course outline:

These half courses may consist of any two third-year modules. Either half course may be taken instead of a full course or in addition to it. A student who takes both MAM3002H and MAM3003S may count the combination as a major only if the four modules studied would be acceptable for MAM3000W and if the necessary project is completed. Otherwise the combination may be equivalent to MAM3001W. A second-year module may be taken as part of a third-year half course with the course co-ordinator's approval.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 with options in 4th period.

Tutorials: Friday, 14h00-17h00, with tutorials for some modules at other times to be arranged.

DP requirements: A class record of 30%.

Assessment: As for MAM3000W, except that the examination consists of two papers of up to 2 hours each.

Modules for Third-Year Mathematics Courses

		Semester	Prerequisites
3AL	Algebra	1	Module 2IA
3CA	Complex Analysis	2	Module 2RA
3LC	Logic and Computation	1	-
3MS	Metric Spaces	1	Module 2RA
3TA	Topics in Algebra	2	-
3TN	Topics in Analysis	2	Module 3MS

Allowed combinations

All combinations of modules are subject to the restrictions imposed by the timetable and the approval of the course co-ordinator.

Recommended modules for Mathematics Honours courses

Five types of Honours programmes are available to students who have completed senior courses in Mathematics:

- BROAD COVERAGE OF MATHEMATICS:** Intended for prospective researchers and mathematicians.
- TEACHING:** Intended for prospective high school mathematics teachers.

- (c) MATHEMATICS OF COMPUTER SCIENCE: A co-operative venture with the Department of Computer Science. Each Department offers one half of the degree.
- (d) INDUSTRIAL MATHEMATICS: Designed to prepare a mathematician to enter industry, this programme is run jointly through the Department of Mathematics & Applied Mathematics and the Department of Statistical Sciences.
- (e) FINANCIAL MATHEMATICS: Intended to allow students who wish to apply for the MSc in Financial Mathematics to build a sound mathematical base for this Masters course.

Students registering for MAM3000W in 2008 and intending to take (a) are advised to take modules 3MS, 3CA and 3AL as part of their course, and those intending to do (c) are advised to take Modules 3LC and 3AL. Students intending to do (b) are also advised to do 3MS, 3CA and 3AL, but may also do one of these as part of their Honours course. For (c) and (d) please refer also to the entries for MAM4007W and MAM4008W in this Handbook.

Syllabuses

3AL ALGEBRA An introductory course of modern abstract algebra involving the following concepts: algebraic operations; magmas and unitary magmas; semigroups; monoids; closure operators; equivalence relations; categories; isomorphism; initial and terminal objects; algebras, homomorphisms, isomorphisms; subalgebras; products; quotient algebras; canonical factorizations of homomorphisms; free algebras. Various classical-algebraic constructions for groups, rings, fields, and vector spaces, seen as examples of these concepts, will be described in tutorials.

3CA COMPLEX ANALYSIS An introduction to the theory of complex functions with applications.

3LC LOGIC AND COMPUTATION The propositional and predicate calculi: their syntax, semantics and metatheory. Resolution theorem proving.

3MS METRIC SPACES An introduction to metric spaces and their topology, with applications.

3TA TOPICS IN ALGEBRA A selection from lattices and order, congruences, Boolean algebra, representation theory, naive set theory, universal algebra. (Please note that this module is not a prerequisite for entry to the Honours course in Algebra.)

3TN TOPICS IN ANALYSIS A selection from the implicit function theorem and inverse mapping theorem, Lebesgue integral, Fourier analysis, Hilbert spaces, Lebesgue and Sobolev spaces, Fractals and approximation theory. (Please note that this module is not a prerequisite for entry to the Honours course in Functional Analysis.)

Courses Offered in Other Faculties

The Department of Mathematics & Applied Mathematics also offers courses to students registered in other faculties, as follows:

(See the appropriate Faculty Handbooks for course details).

FACULTY OF COMMERCE

MAM1010F/S	Mathematics 1010
MAM1012F/S	Mathematics 1012

FACULTY OF ENGINEERING AND THE BUILT ENVIRONMENT

MAM1003W	Mathematics 1003
MAM1042S	Engineering Statics
MAM1045S	Modelling and Programming with MATLAB for Electrical Engineers
MAM2003Z	Mathematics 2003
MAM2044F	Introduction to Mathematical Modelling
MAM2050S	Boundary-value Problems
MAM2053S	Numerical Analysis and Scientific Computing
MAM2080W	Mathematics 2080
MAM2082F	Computer Programming in MATLAB
MAM3004Z	Mathematics 3004

98 DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

MAM3043S	Methods of Mathematical Physics
MAM3049S	Introduction to General Relativity
MAM3050F	Numerical Modelling
MAM3052F	Non-linear Dynamics
MAM3054S	Fluid Dynamics
MAM3080F	Numerical Methods

FACULTY OF HUMANITIES

MAM1014F	Quantitative Literacy for Humanities
MAM1015S	Introductory Mathematics for Quantitative Social Sciences
MAM1016S	Quantitative Literacy for Social Science

FACULTY OF LAW

MAM1013F	Law that counts : Quantative Literacy for Law
MAM1013S	Law that counts : Quantative Literacy for Law

Postgraduate Courses

There are several Honours programmes available to students who have completed senior courses in Applied Mathematics and Mathematics. A booklet will be available from the Department giving details. Those interested should enquire at the Department's offices, or write to The Head, Department of Mathematics & Applied Mathematics, University of Cape Town, Rondebosch 7701. Course co-ordinator for all Honours programmes in the Department: To be advised.

MAM4000W BSc (HONS) IN MATHEMATICS

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: Normally a BSc degree with MAM3000W, or equivalent. In all cases subject to individual approval by the Head of Department. See the MAM3000W entry for recommended undergraduate modules.

Course outline:

Each module offered at Honours level carries a credit rating, and a minimum of 30 credits is required for the Honours degree. A module consisting of three lectures and one tutorial per week has a credit rating of four. Each student will be required to do a project (with a credit rating of three). Three streams are available:

Mathematical orientation: This course provides an introduction to some topics which are basic to a professional mathematician. The following modules are among those that have been offered in recent years: Algebra, Algebraic Geometry, Algebraic Topology, Category Theory, Complex Function Theory, Computability and Complexity, Differential Geometry, Differential Topology, Functional Analysis, Lie Algebras, Measure Theory, Number Theory, Quantum Computing, Topology.

Teaching orientation: This course is for students who intend to enter the teaching profession. It aims at a very broad coverage of mathematics, without necessarily providing great depth. Students may be required to take some of the undergraduate courses that they did not take in their first degree. Students taking this orientation may need to undertake a programme of further work if they wish to proceed to a Master's degree.

Financial Mathematics: The aim of this stream is to allow students who wish to apply for the MPhil in Mathematical Finance (Commerce) to build a sound mathematical base for this Masters course by doing appropriate modules in Mathematics, Applied Mathematics and Statistics, mostly (but not exclusively) at Honours level. Curricula must be approved by the Course Convenor. Students who have completed this stream may be allowed to do an MPhil in Mathematical Finance, but may have to do additional work before being admitted to an MSc in Mathematics.

MAM4001W BSc (HONS) IN APPLIED MATHEMATICS

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: Normally a BSc degree with MAM3040W, or an equivalent. In all cases subject to individual approval by the Head of Department.

Course outline:

A number of modules are offered at Honours level; these have a weighting of either one, one and a half, or two units, where one unit is equivalent to approximately 25 lectures. A complete Honours degree requires a total of at least 12 units, although students are encouraged to take 14 units rather than the minimum of 12. Among the modules which have been offered in recent years are: Advanced Mathematical Methods, Project, Seminar, Nonlinear Optimisation, Environmental Modelling, General Relativity and Cosmology and Continuum Mechanics. It is a requirement that all Honours curricula include the module, Project and Seminar, but otherwise there is considerable flexibility in the structure of individual curricula. Furthermore, it is recommended that students include one or more modules from cognate departments in order to make up a well-rounded degree. However, the curriculum should include no fewer than 8 units from Applied Mathematics.

MAM4007W BSc (HONS) IN MATHEMATICS OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor V Brattka

Entrance requirements: Normally a BSc degree with a major in either Computer Science or Mathematics and at least second-year level in the other, but in all cases subject to individual approval by the Heads of both departments.

Course outline:

This Honours degree is offered jointly by the Departments of Computer Science and Mathematics & Applied Mathematics. Its subject matter involves logical and mathematical theories and structures relevant to computer science, together with their applications. Students will be required to do approximately half their work in each department, including course work in both departments and a minor project for a sixth of the requirements for the course. Every syllabus must be approved by the Heads of both departments. Completion of this degree could yield admission to Master's studies in either Mathematics or Computer Science.

MAM4008W BSc (HONS) IN INDUSTRIAL MATHEMATICS

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: Normally a BSc degree in Applied Mathematics, Computer Science, Mathematics or Statistics, though graduates in other subjects (such as Physics or Engineering) are also eligible to apply. Admission is in all cases at the discretion of the Heads of the Department of Mathematics & Applied Mathematics and the Department of Statistical Sciences.

Course outline:

This programme is offered jointly by the Departments of Mathematics & Applied Mathematics and Statistical Sciences. The curriculum comprises a set of core courses, including case studies in the Mathematics of Management, a set of elective courses, and a project. Each student's curriculum has to be approved by the course co-ordinator. Further details about the curriculum may be obtained from the course co-ordinator.

PHY4002W BSc (HONS) IN MATHEMATICAL & THEORETICAL PHYSICS

The Honours degree is offered jointly by the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics and the Department of Physics.

See entry under courses offered by the Department of Physics.

AST4007W BSc (HONS) IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE (National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme)

For course details see entry under Department of Astronomy.

AST5003F TAUGHT COMPONENT OF THE MSc IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE (National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme)

For course details see entry under Department of Astronomy.

MAM5005W DISSERTATION COMPONENT OF THE MSc IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE

Entrance requirements: AST5003F

Dissertation: Students will work on an approved research topic on which a dissertation must be presented.

MAM5000W MASTERS IN MATHEMATICS

Supervision of research towards the Masters degree will be provided in the areas of research represented in the Department (see 'Research in Mathematics & Applied Mathematics') and further details may be obtained from the Head of Department (see address at the beginning of the section "Postgraduate courses"). General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

MAM5001W MASTERS IN APPLIED MATHEMATICS

The course will consist of the investigation of one or two topics chosen for intensive study by the candidate and approved by the Head of Department. Examination will be by dissertation. An oral examination may be required. The Department has research programmes in four particular areas of Applied Mathematics, namely (i) general relativity and astrophysics, (ii) mathematical modelling of biological, ecological and environmental systems, (iii) continuum mechanics, applied analysis and finite elements, and (iv) nonlinear evolution equations and non-integrable systems. See also 'Research in Mathematics & Applied Mathematics'. Candidates will be particularly encouraged to take part in one of these programmes. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

MAM5002W and MAM5003W MASTERS IN MATHEMATICS OF FINANCE

MAM5002W will no longer be offered from 2009. MAM5003W is the dissertation component of the MSc in Mathematics of Finance and will be offered in 2009 to those who have completed MAM5002W.

Note: The MSc degree in Mathematics of Finance will be replaced from 2009 by CM027, the MPhil in Mathematical Finance, refer Commerce Faculty Handbook.

MAM6000W PhD IN MATHEMATICS

Candidates are referred to the general rules for the PhD as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies. Supervision of research towards the PhD degree will be provided in the areas of research represented in the Department (see 'Research in Mathematics & Applied Mathematics' and <http://www.mth.uct.ac.za>) and further details may be obtained from the Head of Department (see address at the beginning of the section 'Postgraduate Courses').

MAM6001W PhD IN APPLIED MATHEMATICS

As for MAM6000W.

DEPARTMENT OF MOLECULAR AND CELL BIOLOGY

The Department is housed in the Molecular Biology Building, 22 University Avenue
Telephone (021) 650-3270 Fax (021) 689-7573
The Departmental abbreviation for Molecular and Cell Biology is MCB.

Associate Professor and Head of Department:

V E Coyne, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Emeritus Professors:

H Klump, Dr rer nat habil *Freiberg* Dipl Chem

J A Thomson, BSc *Cape Town* MA *Cantab* PhD *Rhodes*

Professors of Biochemistry:

J M Farrant, BSc (Hons) PhD *Natal*

J P Hapgood, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Professor of Microbiology:

E P Rybicki, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Associate Professors:

V R Abratt, BSc (Hons) Rhodes PhD *Cape Town*

W F Brandt, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

N Illing, MSc *Cape Town* DPhil *Oxon*

S J Reid, BSc (Hons) PhD *Rhodes*

Senior Lecturer:

C O'Ryan, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Lecturers:

R A Ingle, BA (Hons) DPhil *Oxon*

P Meyers, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

S Rafudeen, BSc (Hons), PhD *Cape Town*

L Roden, BSc (Hons) *Wits* PhD *Cantab*

J D E A Rodrigues, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Principal Scientific Officer:

P Thompson, BSc *Cape Town*

Chief Scientific Officers:

M Chauhan

A M Clennell, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town*

F Davids

M D James

T Millard, BSc *Pret*

Senior Scientific Officer:

S Grové BSc (Hons) MSc *Stell*

Principal Technical Officer:

N Bredekamp

Chief Technical Officer:

U R Mutzeck

Senior Technical Officer:

D September

Research Assistant/Technical Officer:

P Ma, MSc *Cape Town*

Finance Officer/Manager:

Y L Burrows

Administrative Assistant:

E J Liebenberg

SAP R/3 Administrator:

R Ferguson

Secretary:

C Sandwith

Librarian:

J L Eidelman, BA PGDipLib *Cape Town*

Departmental Assistants:

M Andreas

K Diedericks

C Hendrickse

D A Human

M Josias

P Louw

J Paulse

J Solomons

F Stuurman

RESEARCH IN MOLECULAR AND CELL BIOLOGY

The Department has interests and expertise in diverse areas of biology. Plant desiccation research (Professor Farrant, Associate Professors Brandt, Illing and Dr Rodrigues): the problem of desiccation in plants is being tackled by a combination of physiological and molecular approaches. Desiccation stress is also being investigated in yeast. Plant biotechnology (Professors Rybicki and Thomson and Drs Ingle, Rafudeen and Roden): research is focussed on developing virus-resistant and drought-tolerant crops, and improving transgene expression. Signal transduction in *Arabidopsis thaliana* is being studied during plant-pathogen and plant-insect interactions, as well as in the control of flowering time. Eukaryotic gene expression (Professor Hapgood, Associate Professor Illing and Dr Roden): projects include regulation of transcription by steroid receptors, the role of chromatin modifications in regulating the onset of flowering, the regulation of gene expression during neuronal differentiation, the role that histone H1 plays in regulating gene expression in yeast, and the role of histone methylation in chromatin structure. Evolutionary genetics (Dr O'Ryan): projects focus on the evolution of neutral DNA markers to address population-genetics questions. Molecular virology (Professor Rybicki): studies focus on the expression of antigens from human papillomaviruses, HIV and other viruses in plants and in insect cells for use as human and animal vaccines, and on the genetic diversity and molecular biology of single-stranded DNA viruses. Research in marine biotechnology (Associate Professor Coyne): includes studies on the immune response of the abalone (*Haliotis midae*), the bacteria involved in abalone nutrition, and the stress response system in the marine alga, *Gracilaria gracilis*. Research in microbiology (Associate Professors Abratt and Reid and Dr Meyers): includes molecular-genetic investigations of industrially and medically important anaerobic bacteria such as *Corynebacterium*, *Bacteroides fragilis*, *Bifidobacterium* and the fibre-degrading bacteria in the ostrich gut. South African soil and marine actinomycete bacteria are being screened for novel antibiotics. Analytical services (Associate Professor Brandt and Dr Rodrigues): the Department runs an analytical-biochemistry facility (amino acid analysis, DNA sequencing, DNA synthesis, MALDI mass spectrometry and protein sequencing) and a Microarray Facility (capar) (Associate Professor Illing).

Undergraduate Courses

NOTE: Oral examinations in place of supplementary examinations may be held outside of the examination period.

Second-Year Courses

MCB2014F MOLECULAR COMPONENTS OF CELLS

NOTE: Entrance is limited to 140 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Rodrigues

Entrance requirements: CEM1000W or equivalent

Course outline:

This course deals with the structures and properties of biological molecules and macromolecules as a basis to understanding the distinctive properties of living systems. Topics include: properties of water, pH, amino acids, protein primary and higher order structure, carbohydrates, lipids, membranes, nucleotides and nucleic acids, prokaryotic DNA replication, transcription and translation. Protein synthesis, chromatin structure, thermodynamics and enzymes are also covered.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4

Tutorials: One tutorial per week.

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Tuesday 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB2015S METABOLISM

NOTE: Entrance is limited to 140 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr J Rodrigues

Entrance requirements: MCB2014F

Course outline:

This course deals with aspects of prokaryotic and eukaryotic metabolism. The following are covered: energetics and thermodynamics, glycolysis, citric acid cycle, oxidative phosphorylation, photosynthesis, gluconeogenesis, glycogen and the pentose phosphate pathway, lipid and amino acid metabolism and nitrogen fixation.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4

Tutorials: One tutorial per week.

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Tuesday 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals

Assessment: Essays and tests count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB2016F INTRODUCTION TO MICROBIOLOGY

NOTE: Entrance is limited to 100 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr M S Rafudeen

Entrance requirements: CEM1000W or equivalent, BIO1000F.

Course outline:

Prokaryote cell structure and function; bacterial growth and control; microbial diversity and taxonomy.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Lectures:	5	5	5	5	5

Tutorials: One tutorial per week.

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.

Assessment: Tests and essays count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB2017S MICROBIAL BIOTECHNOLOGY**Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr P Meyers**Entrance requirements:** MCB2016F**Course outline:**

Microbial biotechnology; production of fine chemicals; basics of fermentation; water purification.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 5 5 5 5 5**Tutorials:** One tutorial per week.**Practicals:** One practical per week, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.**DP requirements:** 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.**Assessment:** Tests and essays count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB2018F INTRODUCTION TO GENETICS*Note: Entrance is limited to 90 students.***Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr C O'Ryan**Entrance requirements:** BIO1000F, BIO1004S, CEM1000W or equivalent**Course outline:**

This course will cover an introduction to the basic principles of genetics. Topics include the chromosomal theory of inheritance, genome organisation, chromosome numbers, duplications, rearrangements and transposons, sex determination and sex-linked genes, basic genetic linkage and mapping, human genetics, extranuclear inheritance. An introduction will also be given to population genetics and conservation/evolution genetics.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 3 3 3 3 3**Tutorials:** One tutorial per week.**Practicals:** One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.**DP requirements:** 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.**Assessment:** Tests and essays count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB2019S EUKARYOTIC GENE REGULATION & CELL SIGNALLING*Note: Entrance is limited to 90 students.***Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr R Ingle**Entrance requirements:** MCB2014F or MCB2018F**Course outline:**Principles of eukaryotic gene regulation including: gene structure; regulation of gene transcription and chromatin modification; post-transcriptional regulation: RNA processing, RNAi, RNA stability and storage; translation; post-translational modifications; protein degradation. Principles of cell signalling including: GPCRs, tyrosine receptors, steroid receptors, channels, signal transduction pathways, neurotransmission, plant receptors and signalling pathways. Integration of principles of genetics, eukaryotic gene regulation and cell signalling in a cellular context using the following examples, *Drosophila* axis determination, regulation of the cell cycle and apoptosis, cancer, circadian rhythms.**Period****Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 3 3 3 3 3**Tutorials:** One tutorial per week.

Practicals: One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.

Assessment: Tests and essays count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

Third-Year Courses

NOTE: All MCB majors must complete MCB3012Z (Research project in Molecular and Cell Biology) during the second semester. This course replaces practical classes for all third year second semester MCB courses.

MCB3012Z RESEARCH PROJECT IN MOLECULAR & CELL BIOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor J Hapgood

Entrance requirements: MCB3019F, MCB3020F or MCB3021F (or concurrent registration in MCB3022S, MCB3023S or MCB3024S).

Course outline:

Pairs of students will select and perform a research project two afternoons per week by arrangement. The work will be written up in the form of a research paper.

Practicals: Two afternoons per week

DP requirements: None

Assessment: Project counts 100%.

MCB3019F RECOMBINANT DNA, GENOMICS & PROTEOMICS

Note: Entrance is limited to 120 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr L Roden

Entrance requirements: Any two second year MCB courses, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H and STA1007S or STA1000S)

Course outline:

This course includes recombinant DNA techniques and an introduction to genomic/proteomic and computational approaches to study molecular systems. Topics include: DNA isolation, restriction endonucleases, cloning, polymerase chain reaction, genetic and physical maps, DNA sequencing, databases, comparative genomics, gene expression analysis, proteomics.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------

Lectures:	3	3	3	3	3
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday or Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.

Assessment: Tests and essays count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB3020F PROTEIN STRUCTURE & FUNCTION

Note: Entrance is limited to 100 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor W Brandt

Entrance requirements: MCB2001S or MCB2015S, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H and STA1007S or STA1000S)

Course outline:

This course deals with aspects of protein structure and function covering the following topics: protein purification, protein secondary, tertiary and quaternary structure, advanced aspects of enzymology, non-Michaelis Menten Kinetics, WMC model, cooperativity and allostery, Scatchard and Hill plots, haemoglobin, myoglobin, bisubstrate reactions, protein-DNA interactions, cell signalling, signal transduction, receptor structure, channels and neurotransmission.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: One practical per week, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.

Assessment: Tests and essays count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB3021F MOLECULAR MICROBIAL GENETICS

NOTE: Entrance is limited to 60 students.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor V R Abratt

Entrance requirements: MCB2016F, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H and STA1007S or STA1000S)

Course outline:

Bacterial genetics, recombination and repair, prokaryotic gene regulation.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	5	5	5	5	5
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all practicals.

Assessment: Tests and essays count 40%; practicals count 10%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB3022S ADVANCED BIOTECHNOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr P Meyers

Entrance requirements: Any two 2nd year MCB courses, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H and STA1007S or STA1000S). MCB2017S highly recommended.

Course outline:

New venture planning; metabolic engineering, bioethanol; beer and wine biotechnology; biotransformations; heterologous gene expression; bioprocess technology; bioprocess kinetics.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	2	2	2	2	2
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Tutorials: One tutorial per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments; attendance at all tutorials.

Assessment: Tests and assignments count 20%; project counts 20%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 60%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB3023S MOLECULAR EVOLUTIONARY GENETICS & DEVELOPMENT

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor N Illing

Entrance requirements: MCB2018F, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H and STA1007S or STA1000S). MCB2019S and MCB3019F highly recommended.

Course outline:

Molecular data used in evolutionary genetics; neutral theory of evolution; advanced population genetics; behavioural genetics; Principles of mouse molecular genetics applied to vertebrate eye and limb development; Evolution of development and genetics of morphological variation.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	3	3	3	3	3
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

DP requirements: 40% test average; 50% average for assignments.

Assessment: Tests and essays count 40%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 60%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

MCB3024S DEFENCE & DISEASE

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor E Rybicki

Entrance requirements: Any two second year MCB courses, MAM1000W (or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H and STA1007S or STA1000S)

Course outline:

This course will introduce the vertebrate immune system and its components such as MHC cell structure and pathogen recognition. The immune systems of invertebrates and plants will then be examined. The focus will switch to the viruses, such as HIV, and how they evade the immune system in order to infect their host. Finally, the course will focus on strategies to produce vaccines that enable immunity to viral infection.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

DP requirements: 40 % test average; 50 % average for assignments.

Assessment: Tests and essays count 40%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 60%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

Postgraduate Courses

MCB4002W BSc (HONS) IN MOLECULAR & CELL BIOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor S J Reid

Entrance requirements: BSc degree with a major in Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Genetics or Microbiology. Molecular-based courses are highly recommended. Preference may be given to UCT graduates. Entrance is limited to 30 students, dependent on availability of supervisors and funding. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of senior course results and material covered in the undergraduate curriculum.

Course outline:

Ten week techniques course including gel electrophoresis, ELISAS, recombinant DNA technology, radiation safety, PCR, sequencing, bioinformatics. Choice of modules in advanced topics in Biochemistry, Genetics & Development, Microbiology and Biotechnology. Six month research project.

DP requirements: Techniques examination 50% to continue course.

Assessment: Two 3-hour techniques examinations written in May count 15%; essays count 20%; oral presentations count 15%; one 4-hour examination written in November counts 10%; projects count 40%.

MCB5005W MASTERS IN MOLECULAR & CELL BIOLOGY

General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook. The Department provides facilities for research and supervision in the field of Molecular and Cell Biology. Candidates must carry out a research project leading to the presentation of a dissertation.

MCB5008W MASTERS IN BIOINFORMATICS

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr N Mulder

Entrance requirements: An Honours degree in either Molecular & Cell Biology, Computer Science or Mathematics.

General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook. Candidates must carry out a research project leading to the presentation of a dissertation.

MCB6002W PhD IN MOLECULAR & CELL BIOLOGY

Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies. The Department provides facilities for research and supervision in the branches of Molecular Biology outlined in the preceding section on research in the Department.

DEPARTMENT OF OCEANOGRAPHY

The Department is housed in the RW James Building, Residence Road
 Telephone (021) 650-3277 Fax (021) 650-3979
 The Departmental abbreviation for Oceanography is SEA.

Professor and Head of Department:

F A Shillington, BSc (Hons) *Wits* MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Emeritus Professor of Physical Oceanography:

G B Brundrit, BSc (Hons) PhD *Manchester*

Honorary Professor in Oceanography:

L V Shannon, MSc PhD *Cape Town* FRSSAf

South African Research Chair in Modelling of the Coupled Ocean-Land-Atmosphere

Phenomena Related to Climate:

S G H Philander, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Harvard*

Professors:

J R E Lutjeharms, MSc DSc *Cape Town* PhD *Washington* FRSSAf

C J C Reason, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* MPhil *City* MSc PhD *British Columbia*

Senior Lecturer:

H N Waldron, BSc (Hons) *Swansea* MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Lecturer:

I J Ansoorge, BSc *Plymouth* MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Senior Research Officer:

M Rouault, MSc PhD *Aix-Marseille*

Honorary Research Associates:

S Bernard, BSc *Soton* PhD *Cape Town* (CSIR)

C M Duncombe Rae, BSc *Rhodes* BSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town* (University of Maine)

K P Findlay, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* MSc PhD *Pret* (Southern Whales)

J Hermes, BSc *Bongor* PhD *Cape Town* (SAEON)

P M S Monteiro, MSc PhD *Cape Town* (CSIR)

G Siedler, PhD *rer.nat* *Kiel*

Departmental Librarian:

E Sithole, BSocSci P Dip LIS *Cape Town*

Principal Technical Officer:

P B Hanekom, BSc *Cape Town*

Senior Scientific Officer:

C Whittle, MSc *Cape Town*

Administrative Officer:

R Harris

MARINE RESEARCH INSTITUTE (MA-RE)

Director:

J G Field, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* FRSSAf

Manager:

E Balarin, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes*

Administrative Assistant:

H King

RESEARCH IN OCEANOGRAPHY

Physical Oceanography: Ocean modelling, coastal oceanography, air-sea interaction, shelf dynamics, marine climatology, climate variability, marine and coastal meteorology, extreme events, Benguela current studies, remote sensing (Professors G B Brundrit, J R E Lutjeharms, S G H Philander, L V Shannon, F A Shillington, C J Reason and Drs I J Ansoorge, M Rouault and H N Waldron).

Undergraduate Courses

Second-Year Courses

In addition to forming part of the specialisations in Atmospheric Science and Ocean and Atmosphere Science, the undergraduate course SEA2003F in the Oceanography Department is intended for second- or third-year Science students specialising in related disciplines, with an interest in the marine environment.

SEA2003F INTRODUCTORY PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY & MARINE DISASTERS

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr I J Ansorge

Entrance requirements: PHY1031F or PHY1032S or GEO1009F (ERT1000F) or EGS1004S (EGS1002S)

Course outline:

A basic introduction to Oceanography. The extent of the oceans, the physical, chemical and biological properties of sea water and typical distributions of water properties in the oceans. Water, salt and heat budgets, sea surface fluxes and ocean climatology. Principal forcing and responses of the sea, tides and waves. Currents and water masses in the oceans of the world. South African regional oceanography. Tutorials and practicals in oceanographic instrumentation and methods of analysis.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Practicals: One tutorial or practical per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Attendance at tutorials and practicals and a class mark of at least 40%.

Assessment: Tutorials/practicals and tests count 40%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 60%.

SEA2002S COASTAL OCEANOGRAPHY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr H N Waldron

Entrance requirements: SEA2003F

Course outline:

The study of the South African coastal ocean environment from the shore to the shelf edge. Wave and current dynamics; beach processes. Implications for biology and geology. Practical work in the field.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Practicals: One tutorial or practical per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Attendance at tutorials and practicals and a class mark of at least 40%.

Assessment: Tutorials/practicals and tests count 40%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 60%.

Third-Year Courses

SEA3002F OCEAN CIRCULATION

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor F A Shillington/ Professor C J Reason

Entrance requirements: MAM1004F or MAM1005H, PHY1031F or PHY1032S, SEA2003F, SEA2002S

Course outline:

The physical and dynamical basis of large-scale processes in the ocean. An overview of the ocean-

atmosphere environment. Fundamental forces and balances, a framework for geophysical dynamics and circulation studies. Case studies of physical processes in practical situations.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Attendance at practicals and a class mark of at least 40%.

Assessment: Essays and midterm tests count 50%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%.

Postgraduate Courses

SEA4001W BSc (HONS) IN OCEAN & ATMOSPHERE SCIENCE

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr H N Waldron

Entrance requirements: A BSc degree with a major/specialisation in Ocean & Atmosphere Science or in a related discipline. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of final year results, material covered in the undergraduate curriculum, and possibly referee reports. Preference may be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements.

Course outline:

Scope: Honours students intending careers in ocean and atmosphere science will complete a full set of modules and a research project. Honours students from Environmental & Geographical Science, Applied Mathematics, and other physical science and engineering departments, are encouraged to attend selected modules, such as "how to build a habitable planet".

Content: Lecture-tutorials (70%), seminars (20%) and practical work (10%) in advanced physical oceanography, meteorology and marine climatology, an introduction to earth systems science, including participation in a research cruise. First semester modules: physical properties of the ocean and atmosphere, large scale ocean and atmosphere, synoptic variability and South African regional dynamics of the ocean and atmosphere. Second semester modules: air-sea interaction influences on heat budget and climate variability, mesoscale and coastal oceanography and meteorology studies, remote sensing of the ocean and atmosphere, ocean waves and atmospheric convection processes. Student performance in each module will be assessed by short research assignments at regular intervals and written examinations, together making up 70% of the final mark. In the second half of the year the research project will take priority and account for 30% of the grade. Students will be expected to present a seminar on their projects at the year's end.

Assessment: Essays and tests count 70%; the research project count 30%. Module assessment by submission of research portfolio.

SEA5000W MASTERS IN OCEAN & ATMOSPHERE SCIENCE

Candidates are required to undertake research and complete a dissertation on an approved topic. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

SEA5001W MASTERS IN PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY

Candidates are required to undertake research and complete a dissertation on an approved topic. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

SEA5002H and SEA5003W MASTERS IN APPLIED MARINE SCIENCE

(by coursework and dissertation)

This MSc programme is offered in Operational Oceanography. It is designed to attract students with proven quantitative skills from Science and Engineering and to provide them with expertise and experience in Operational Oceanography.

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor C J C Reason

Entrance requirements: Students entering the programme must have completed an Honours degree in Ocean and Atmosphere Science or closely related discipline (or an equivalent four year degree).

Course outline:

Prescribed coursework: Component 1 (SEA5002H): Students must complete a compulsory programme of introductory coursework in all aspects of Oceanography, including field work. This is followed by advanced coursework in observations, analysis, interpretation and forecasting in aspects of operational oceanography, supplemented by skills and professional practice. In 2009, two semester long modules will form part of the core requirements for the Component 1:

- A. How to build a habitable planet I: the role of physical processes
- B. How to build a habitable planet II: the role of chemistry and biology

Assessment: Assessment of Component 1 (SEA5002H) will be by formal examination and continual assessment of essays and written assignments. Component 2 (SEA5003W) is a mini thesis which will be formally examined. Components 1 & 2 each count 50% to the final assessment of the degree.

Dissertation: Component 2 (SEA5003W): A short research project must be completed and submitted for formal examination, which addresses a particular aspect of operational oceanography.

SEA6000W PhD IN PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY

Applications for candidature are considered on merit. Candidates are required to complete an original research project and thesis on an approved topic. Rules for the degree may be found in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

The Department is housed in the R W James Building, 9 University Avenue
 Telephone (021) 650-3326 Fax (021) 650-3342
 The Departmental abbreviation for Physics is PHY.

Professor and Head of Department:

D G Aschman, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* DPhil *Oxon*

Emeritus Professors:

F D Brooks, DSc *Rhodes*

C A Dominguez, MSc PhD *Buenos Aires* FRSSAf

S M Perez, BSc (Hons) *Wits* DPhil *Oxon*

R D Viollier, dipl phys *Basel* Dr phil nat *Basel* FRSSAf

Emeritus Associate Professors:

J W F Juritz, MSc *Cape Town*

P E Spargo, BSc (Eng) MSc *Wits* Cert Ed *Cantab* FRSSAf

G N v d H Robertson, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* DPhil *Oxon*

Professor of Theoretical Physics:

J W A Cleymans, MSc D en Sc *Louvain* FRSSAf

Associate Professors:

M S Allie, MSc PhD *Cape Town* (CHED)

D T Britton, MSc PhD *London*

A Buffler, MSc PhD HDE *Cape Town* (CHED)

C M Comrie, MSc *Natal* PhD *Cantab*

R W Fearick, BSc (Hons) PhD *Wits*

M Härting, Dipl Phys *Regensburg* Dr. Ing *BW München*

Senior Lecturers:

I Govender, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* HDE *Unisa*

A T M Muronga, MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Minnesota*

Z Z Vilakazi, MA PhD *Wits* (on long leave)

Lecturer:

M R Nchodu, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Temporary Lecturers:

T S Volkwyn, MSc *Cape Town*

S M Wheaton, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Part-time Lecturers:

G Leigh, HDE MSc *Cape Town*

Honorary Research Associate:

F E Lubben, MSc *Delft* MA *York* PGCE *Delft*

Senior Research Associate:

G B Tupper, MSc *Berkeley* PhD *Oklahoma*

Principal Technical Officers:

D Boulton

L N van Heerden, BSc *Stell*

Chief Technical Officers:

G K Fowle

K J Ontong

Department Administrator:

N Lovric

Senior Secretary:

Librarian:

S Knox

Laboratory Attendants:

M Christians

L Oliver

G Swartz

Departmental Assistant:

M Lawrence

RESEARCH IN PHYSICS

The Department of Physics is accommodated in the R W James Building, which houses laboratories equipped for nuclear physics, positron physics, X-ray diffraction and physics education research. Additional facilities available to the Department are provided by iThemba Laboratories for Accelerator Based Sciences (200 MeV cyclotron and a 5 MeV Van de Graaff accelerator).

Major areas of interest at present include:

1 Experimental nuclear physics: gamma ray spectroscopy, giant resonance reactions with the magnetic spectrometer, neutron cross sections, applied neutron physics (Professor D G Aschman, Associate Professors M S Allie, A Buffler and R W Fearick and Dr M R Nchodu).

2 Research in Theoretical Physics comprising:

- (a) Structure of elementary particles.
- (b) Weak interactions: Coherent neutrino interaction with matter, weak decays of particles.
- (c) Quantum field theory: Quantum electrodynamics and chromodynamics in free space and in the cavity. Confinement. Vacuum structure.
- (d) Heavy neutrino astrophysics and cosmology.
- (e) Dark matter and energy, Brane cosmology.
- (f) Structure of nuclei: Alpha and exotic decay, alpha and exotic cluster structure of nuclei, relativistic nuclear mode (Dr A T M Muronga).

3 UCT-ALICE research centre: Relativistic heavy ion collisions within the ALICE collaboration at CERN, Geneva, Switzerland (Professor J Cleymans, Associate Professor R Fearick and Dr Z Vilakazi).

4 Solid state physics: Structural and electrical properties of thin films (Associate Professor C M Comrie). Surface, near-surface and bulk defect studies using positron annihilation (Associate Professor D T Britton). X-ray diffraction studies of strain fields and residual stress analysis (Associate Professor M Härting)

5 Physics education: Problem solving in physics, curriculum design and evaluation, language in science, students' understanding of measurement and uncertainty, modelling and visualization (Associate Professors M S Allie and A Buffler)

6 Applied Physics: Particulate flow and interaction characterization in engineering and biological systems by computational and mechanistic modelling, and measurement techniques (Dr I Govender and Associate Professor A Buffler)

Undergraduate Courses

Credit will not be given for both PHY1023H and PHY1031F. Credit will not be given for both of PHY1024F and PHY1032S.

First-Year Courses

PHY1004W MATTER & INTERACTIONS

A calculus-based introductory course for Science students intending to continue with second-year Physics.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor A Buffler

Entrance requirements: Students will normally be expected to have passed Physical Science NSC level 5 (or senior certificate HG C). MAM1000W (or equivalent) must have been passed or be taken concurrently.

Course outline:

MODERN MECHANICS: Conservation laws, the momentum principle, atomic nature of matter,

conservation of energy, energy in macroscopic systems, energy quantization, multiparticle systems, exploring the nucleus, angular momentum, entropy, kinetic theory of gases, efficiency of engines.

ELECTRIC AND MAGNETIC INTERACTIONS: Electric fields, electric potential, magnetic fields, electric circuits, capacitance, resistance, magnetic force, Gauss' law, Ampere's law, Faraday's law, induction, electromagnetic radiation, waves and particles, semiconductor devices.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record; 50% in laboratory assessment.

Assessment: Class record (weekly problem sets and class tests) counts 25%; laboratory record (weekly laboratory marks and two laboratory examinations) counts 25%; one June 2-hour examination counts 25%; one November 2-hour examination counts 25%.

PHY1023H PRINCIPLES OF PHYSICS A

A calculus-based introductory course primarily for students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS). It is possible for students from other courses to transfer to this course during the year.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor M S Allie

Entrance requirements: This course is taken by students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science.

Course outline:

The first half of this course provides students with the essential tools and skills that are required for dealing successfully with physics at first-year university level. The three broad areas that are covered are (a) mathematical techniques and their relationship with physical phenomena, (b) experimental procedures and (c) communication skills, in particular report writing. The second half of the course covers material similar to that of the first half of PHY1004W.

Second semester:

MECHANICS: vectors, kinematics, dynamics, work, energy power, conservative and non-conservative forces, friction, impulse, momentum, collisions, rotation, rotational dynamics, torque, rotational inertia, rotational energy, angular momentum, static equilibrium, gravitation.

PROPERTIES OF MATTER: elasticity, elastic moduli, hydrostatics, hydrodynamics.

THERMAL PHYSICS: temperature, heat, kinetic theory of gases, thermodynamics, entropy.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record; 50% in laboratory assessment.

Assessment: Class record (weekly problem sets and two class tests) counts 25%; laboratory record (weekly laboratory marks and a two-hour laboratory examination) counts 25%; one 3-hour written examination counts 50%.

PHY1024F PRINCIPLES OF PHYSICS B

A calculus-based introductory course usually taken by students who have completed PHY1023H.

Course co-ordinator(s): Mr T S Volkwyn

Entrance requirements: PHY1023H; MAM1000W (or equivalent) must have been passed or be taken concurrently.

Course outline:

ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM: electric charge, electric field, Gauss' law, electric potential, capacitance, current, current density, emf, resistance, resistivity, networks, magnetic field, Biot-Savart law, Ampere's law, electromagnetic induction, inductance, alternating currents.

VIBRATIONS AND WAVES: simple harmonic motion, damped oscillations, forced oscillations, resonance, travelling waves, phase velocity, superposition, standing waves, sound intensity, Doppler effect.

MODERN PHYSICS: electromagnetic waves, interference, diffraction, the electron, quantum physical phenomena, atomic structure, wave-particle duality, X-rays, elementary nuclear physics, radioactivity.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record; 50% in laboratory assessment.

Assessment: Class record (weekly problem sets and two class tests) counts 25%; laboratory record (weekly laboratory marks and a two-hour laboratory examination) counts 25%; one 3-hour written examination counts 50%.

PHY1031F GENERAL PHYSICS A

A non-calculus introductory course for Science students who do not intend proceeding to 2000-level courses in Physics.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor C M Comrie

Entrance requirements: Students will be expected to have passed Physical Science at NSC level 4 (or senior certificate HG E/SG C).

Course outline:

MECHANICS: vectors, kinematics, dynamics, work, energy, power, conservative and non-conservative forces, friction, impulse, momentum, collisions, rotation, rotational dynamics, torque, rotational inertia, rotational energy, angular momentum, static equilibrium, gravitation.

PROPERTIES OF MATTER: elasticity, elastic moduli, hydrostatics, hydrodynamics.

THERMAL PHYSICS: temperature, heat, kinetic theory of gases, thermodynamics.

VIBRATIONS AND WAVES: simple harmonic motion, damped oscillations, forced oscillations, resonance, travelling waves, phase velocity, superposition, standing waves, sound waves, sound intensity, Doppler effect.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Monday, Wednesday, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record; 50% in laboratory assessment.

Assessment: Class record (weekly problem sets and two class tests) counts 25%; laboratory record (weekly laboratory marks and a 2-hour laboratory examination) counts 25%; one 3-hour written examination counts 50%.

PHY1032S GENERAL PHYSICS B

A non-calculus introductory course for Science students who do not intend proceeding to second-year courses in Physics.

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr S M Wheaton

Entrance requirements: At least 40% in PHY1031F, or PHY1023H

Course outline:

ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM: electric charge, electric field, Gauss' law, electric potential, capacitance, current, current density, emf, resistance, resistivity, networks, magnetic field, Biot-Savart law, Ampere's law, electromagnetic induction, inductance, alternating currents.

OPTICS: Geometrical optics, polarization, electromagnetic waves, interference, diffraction.

MODERN PHYSICS: the electron, quantum physical phenomena, atomic structure, wave-particle

duality, X-rays, elementary nuclear physics, radioactivity.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 3 3 3 3 3

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Monday, Wednesday, Thursday or Friday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record; 50% in laboratory assessment.

Assessment: Class record (weekly problem sets and two class tests) counts 25%; laboratory record (weekly laboratory marks and a two-hour laboratory examination) counts 25%; one 3-hour written examination counts 50%.

Second-Year Courses

PHY2009S INTERMEDIATE PHYSICS

A course normally taken by students who have not completed PHY1004W, to prepare them for PHY2014F and PHY2015S.

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor A Buffler

Entrance requirements: PHY1004W or (PHY1023H and PHY1024F), and a half course in Mathematics.

Course outline:

VECTOR FIELDS IN PHYSICS: Vector calculus, div, grad, curl, line, surface and volume integrals, Gauss' Theorem, Stokes' Theorem, simple applications to fluid dynamics and electromagnetism.

STATISTICAL MODELLING OF RADIATION AND MATTER: mathematical descriptions of solids, liquids and gases, entropy, temperature, the Boltzmann distribution, thermodynamics, statistical models of photons, statistical models in quantum mechanics, wave-particle duality.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical or tutorial per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 35% in class record, completion of all laboratory reports and 75% of tutorial work, attendance at all class tests.

Assessment: Class record (tests, tutorials, projects, laboratory work) counts 50%, one 2-hour paper written in November counts 50%.

PHY2014F WAVES & ELECTROMAGNETISM

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor D G Aschman

Entrance requirements: PHY1004W or (PHY2009S and MAM1043H), a full first-year course in Mathematics and MAM2000W or (MAM2004H and MAM2046W) as corequisite.

Course outline:

VIBRATIONS AND WAVES: Harmonic oscillations, damped and forced oscillations, resonance, Fourier analysis, harmonic chains, waves, dispersion, interference, diffraction.

ELECTROMAGNETISM: Vector calculus (div, grad, curl), electrostatics, special techniques for potentials, electric fields in matter, magnetostatics, Magnetic fields in matter, current, Ohm's law, circuits, electromagnetic induction, electrodynamics, Maxwell's equations.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 4

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 35% in class record; completion of all laboratory reports, 75% of tutorial work and problem sets; attendance at all tests; all proficiency tests.

Assessment: Class record (tests, weekly problem sets and laboratory work) counts 50%; one 3-hour examination written in June counts 50%.

PHY2015S CLASSICAL & QUANTUM MECHANICS

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor J W A Cleymans

Entrance requirements: As for PHY2014F.

Course outline:

CLASSICAL MECHANICS: Review of Newton's laws, constraints, D'Alembert principle, Lagrangian formulation of mechanics, conservation laws, applications, central forces, planetary motion, small oscillations, normal co-ordinates.

QUANTUM MECHANICS: The basic assumptions of quantum mechanics, solutions of Schrödinger's equation, properties of wave functions and operators, one-dimensional applications, angular momentum in quantum mechanics, three-dimensional applications, the hydrogen atom, approximate methods.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 4

Practicals: One computational practical per week, Monday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Minimum of 30% in class record; completion of all laboratory reports and 75% of tutorial work, attendance at all tests.

Assessment: Class record (tests, weekly problem sets and laboratory work) counts 50%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%.

Third-Year Courses

PHY3021F ADVANCED PHYSICS A

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor R W Fearick

Entrance requirements: PHY2014F and PHY2015S, and MAM2000W or (MAM2004H and MAM2046W) must have been completed or be taken concurrently.

Course outline:

ELECTROMAGNETISM: Maxwell's equations in vacuum and in matter, conservation laws, momentum and angular momentum in electromagnetic fields, electromagnetic waves, the Fresnel relations, laws of optics, absorption and dispersion, frequency dependence of permittivity, wave guides, gauge transformations, retarded potentials, electric and magnetic dipole radiation, power radiated by a point charge, special relativity, four-vectors, relativistic kinematics, relativistic electrodynamics, the electromagnetic field tensor.

THERMODYNAMICS AND STATISTICAL PHYSICS: Temperature, heat and work, First law of thermodynamics, Ensembles and entropy, Second law of thermodynamics, Boltzmann distribution and Helmholtz free energy, thermal radiation, chemical potential and Gibbs distribution, Fermi-Dirac statistics, electrons in metals, Bose-Einstein statistics, phonons, photons and the black-body distribution, the Bose-Einstein condensate, applications to classical and quantum systems.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 4

Practicals: Two sessions per week, Monday and Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Satisfactory completion of tutorial assignments and laboratory reports.

Assessment: Class tests, essays, projects and laboratory reports count 50%; one 3-hour paper and one 2-hour paper count 50%.

PHY3022S ADVANCED PHYSICS B

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor C M Comrie

Entrance requirements: PHY2014F and PHY2015S, and MAM2000W or (MAM2004H and MAM2046W) must have been completed or be taken concurrently.

Course outline:

ATOMIC PHYSICS: atomic structure and spectra, selection rules, fine structure, molecular structure and spectra.

NUCLEAR AND PARTICLE PHYSICS: properties of nuclei, nuclear forces, nuclear structure and reactions, radioactivity, decay modes, interactions of elementary particles, quarks & leptons, symmetries and the gauge forces.

SOLID STATE PHYSICS: crystal structure; lattice vibrations, electron states in solids, energy band theory, semiconductor physics and devices.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 4 4 4 4 4

Practicals: Two sessions per week, Monday and Thursday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Satisfactory completion of tutorial assignments and laboratory reports.

Assessment: Class tests, essays, projects and laboratory reports count 50%; one 3-hour paper and one 2-hour paper count 50%; oral exam 2%.

Postgraduate Courses

PHY4000W BSc (HONS) IN PHYSICS

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor R W Fearick

Entrance requirements: Entrance requirement is a BSc degree with a major in Physics. Enrollments are limited to an overall total of 15 in PHY4000W, PHY4001W and PHY4002W. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consult the Honours course convenor. Criteria for acceptance include a pass of 60% in PHY3021F and PHY3022S, or equivalent; and a pass of 50% in MAM2000W or MAM2046W or equivalent; and in cases where the Head of Department deems it necessary, favourable referee reports. Preference may be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements.

Course outline:

The Honours course in Physics comprises 12, and optionally up to 14 units. The course consists of the following compulsory modules: Research Project (core), Quantum Mechanics (core), Electromagnetism (core), Statistical Mechanics, Computational Physics, Nuclear Physics and Solid State Physics. Further elective modules may be chosen from Classical Mechanics, Particle Physics, Physics Education and Relativistic Quantum Mechanics, and approved advanced level modules offered by the Departments of Astronomy and Mathematics and Applied Mathematics. Additional modules may be also offered by the Physics Department.

DP requirements: The DP certificate criteria will include, inter alia, satisfactory performance in class tests, examinations written in May/June, problem sets or tutorials, and the project.

Assessment: The pass mark is 50% and is based on an aggregation of all modules, and is further subject to the subminimum criteria of obtaining a minimum mark of 35% in the project, passing two thirds of all modules, and achieving a mark of at least 35% percent in all but one of the core modules. The research project will count 25% of the final mark of a 12 unit course.

PHY4001W BSc (HONS) IN THEORETICAL PHYSICS

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor R W Fearick

Entrance requirements: Entrance requirement is a BSc degree with majors in Physics and Mathematics or Physics and Applied Mathematics. Enrollments are limited to an overall total of 15 in PHY4000W, PHY4001W and PHY4002W. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consult the Honours course convenor. Criteria for acceptance include a pass of 60% in PHY3021F and PHY3022S, or equivalent; a pass of 60% in MAM3000W or MAM3040W, or equivalent; and in cases where the Head of Department deems it necessary, favourable referee

120 DEPARTMENT OF PHYSICS

reports. Preference may be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements.

Course outline:

The Honours course in Theoretical Physics comprises 12, and optionally up to 14 units. The course consists of the following compulsory modules: Research Project (core), Quantum Mechanics (core), Electromagnetism (core), Statistical Mechanics, Classical Mechanics, Particle Physics and Relativistic Quantum Mechanics. Further elective modules may be chosen from Nuclear Physics, Solid State Physics, Computational Physics and Physics Education, and approved advanced level modules offered by the Departments of Astronomy and Mathematics and Applied Mathematics. Additional modules may be also offered by the Physics Department.

DP requirements: The DP certificate criteria will include, inter alia, satisfactory performance in class tests, examinations written in May/June, problem sets or tutorials, and the project.

Assessment: The pass mark is 50% and is based on an aggregation of all modules, and is further subject to the subminimum criteria of obtaining a minimum mark of 35% in the project, passing two thirds of all modules, and achieving a mark of at least 35% percent in all but one of the core modules. The research project will count 25% of the final mark of a 12 unit course.

PHY4002W BSc (HONS) IN MATHEMATICAL & THEORETICAL PHYSICS

Course co-ordinator(s): Associate Professor R W Fearick

Entrance requirements: Entrance requirement is a BSc degree with majors in Physics and Mathematics or Physics and Applied Mathematics. Enrollments are limited to an overall total of 15 in PHY4000W, PHY4001W and PHY4002W. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consult the Honours course convenor and the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics. Criteria for acceptance include a pass of 60% in PHY3021F and PHY3022S, or equivalent; a pass of 60% in MAM3000W or MAM3040W, or equivalent; and in cases where the Head of Department deems it necessary, favourable referee reports. Preference may be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements.

Course outline:

The Honours course in Theoretical and Mathematical Physics comprises 12, and optionally up to 14 units. The course consists of the following compulsory modules: Quantum Mechanics (core), Electromagnetism (core), Advanced Mathematical Methods (core, offered by the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics), and Classical Mechanics. Further elective modules may be chosen from Statistical Mechanics, Particle Physics, Relativistic Quantum Mechanics, Nuclear Physics, Solid State Physics, Computational Physics and Physics Education, and approved advanced level modules offered by the Departments of Astronomy and Mathematics and Applied Mathematics. Additional modules may be also offered by the Physics Department.

DP requirements: The DP certificate criteria will include, inter alia, satisfactory performance in class tests, examinations written in May/June, problem sets or tutorials, and the project.

Assessment: The pass mark is 50% and is based on an aggregation of all modules, and is further subject to the subminimum criteria of obtaining a minimum mark of 35% in the project, passing two thirds of all modules, and achieving a mark of at least 35% percent in all but one of the core modules. The research project will count 25% of the final mark of a 12 unit course.

AST4007W BSc (HONS) IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE (National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme)

For course details see entry under Department of Astronomy.

AST5003F TAUGHT COMPONENT OF THE MSc IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE (National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme)

For course details see entry under Department of Astronomy.

PHY5003W DISSERTATION COMPONENT OF THE MSc IN ASTROPHYSICS & SPACE SCIENCE**Entrance requirements:** AST5003F**Dissertation:** Students will work on an approved research topic on which a dissertation must be presented.

PHY5000W MASTERS IN PHYSICS

The Masters in Physics consists of the completion of a research project on an approved topic on which a dissertation must be presented. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

PHY5001W MASTERS IN THEORETICAL PHYSICS

The Masters in Theoretical Physics is obtained by satisfactorily completing a research project on which a dissertation must be presented. Students are expected to participate in courses which may be offered on topics such as quantum electrodynamics, relativistic quantum field theory, particle physics, electroweak and strong interactions. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

PHY5006W MASTERS IN TERTIARY PHYSICS EDUCATION

The Masters in Physics consists of the completion of a research project on an approved topic on which a dissertation must be presented. General rules for this degree may be found in the front of the handbook.

PHY6000W PhD IN PHYSICS

The PhD degree may be undertaken either in the field of Physics or of Theoretical Physics. In both cases students are required to complete an original research project on which an acceptable thesis must be presented. Students of Theoretical Physics, in addition, must participate successfully in an advanced course entitled Special Topics in Theoretical Physics and in the MSc courses in Theoretical Physics listed in the previous paragraph if these have not been attended previously. Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

PHY6001W PhD IN TERTIARY PHYSICS EDUCATION

Candidates for the PhD degree are required to complete an approved original research project on which an acceptable thesis must be presented. Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

DEPARTMENT OF STATISTICAL SCIENCES

The Department is housed in the P D Hahn Annexe, Chemistry Mall
Telephone (021) 650-3219 Fax (021) 650-4773
The Departmental abbreviation for Statistical Sciences is STA.

Professor and Head of Department:

T T Dunne, BA (Hons) BSc (Hons) UED BEd *Natal* PhD *Cape Town* CStat

Emeritus Professor:

T J Stewart, Pr Eng BSc (Chem Eng) *Cape Town* MSc (OR) PhD *Unisa*

C G Troskie, MSc *Pret* PhD *Unisa*

Emeritus Associate Professor:

J M Juritz, BSc (Hons) *UNISA*, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Professor of Avian Demography:

L G Underhill, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Professors:

G D I Barr, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

D J Bradfield, MSc PhD *Cape Town* HED *Unisa*

R K Guo, BSc *Tsinghua* MSc PhD *Iowa State*

L M Haines, BA MA *Cambridge* BSc (Hons) *Natal* MPhil *UCL* PhD *Unisa*

FRSSAF

Associate Professors:

C Thiar, BSc Agric (Hons) *Stell* MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Honorary Research Associate:

D A Polakow, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

H G Zimmerman, Dipl Math, PhD *Bonn*

Senior Lecturers:

F Little, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

J C Nyirenda BSc *Newcastle Upon Tyne* PhD *Cambridge*

K Stielau, BSc(Hons) *Natal*

Lecturers:

A Clark, MSc *Cape Town*

G Distiller, BCom (Hons) MSc *Cape Town*

I Durbach, MBusSc *Cape Town*

B Erni, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Basel*

F N Gumedze, MSc *Cape Town*

D Katshunga, BSc(Hons) *DRC* MSc *Cape Town*

K Leask, BSc (Hons) *Natal*

M Varughese, BSc (Hons) MSc *Wits* DipAc&Tech *Edinburgh*

L Zacna, MSc *Poland*

Chief Scientific Officers:

Administrative Manager:

B King, HDE *UWC*

Senior Administrative Officer:

M Gallon

Administrative Assistant:

S Achilles

Senior Clerk:

K Jephtha

Receptionist:

A Davids

RESEARCH IN STATISTICAL SCIENCES

Research areas and research units:

OPERATIONAL RESEARCH and MULTICRITERIA DECISION SUPPORT: The development of interactive decision aids, to assist in the analysis of decision problems with multiple and conflicting objectives, with particular reference to natural resource management and others; combinatorial optimization; application to decision making and planning in private and public sectors (T J Stewart, J Nyirenda).

BAYESIAN DECISION THEORY: General principles of Bayesian statistical analysis; applications in sequential stochastic optimization and other fields (T J Stewart, T T Dunne, R K Guo).

ECONOMETRIC MODELLING: Econometric techniques are being used to test theories related to the South African economy in the fields of finance, monetary economics, interest rate theory and stock market research (G D I Barr, C G Troskie, R K Guo, L M Haines).

RELIABILITY MODELLING AND QUALITY CONTROL: System Reliability and Maintenance Modelling and statistical quality control methods and applications (R K Guo, T J Stewart, T T Dunne).

BIOSTATISTICS: Medical applications of statistics (T T Dunne, F Little, L M Haines, J M Juritz, F Gumedze). The objectives of the Biostatistics Interest Group are to develop statistical methodology motivated by medical problems, particularly in the area of Community Health, and to provide statistical support to medical researchers in the form of short courses and consulting.

SPATIAL AND GIS MODELING: Statistics of large geoscience datasets. Geographic information systems (GIS). Geostatistics and spatial modeling (C Thiart, M M Varughese). Imprecise spatial data analysis (R K Guo). Mixed models with spatial data (B Erni).

MULTIVARIATE ANALYSIS: Detection of outliers and influential observations (C G Troskie, T T Dunne, C Thiart, F Gumedze); multivariate distribution theory (C G Troskie); multidimensional scaling, correspondence analysis and cluster analysis (L G Underhill); robust regression procedures (C G Troskie, C Thiart).

EDUCATIONAL APPLICATIONS: Statistical examination of data pertaining to schools, disadvantaged students and to science education (T T Dunne, K Stielau, F Gumedze, L Zagna).

MIXED LINEAR MODELS: Longitudinal data analysis, analysis of repeated measures data, generalized linear (mixed) models, hierarchical generalized linear mixed models (robust estimation and diagnostics). (F Gumedze, C Thiart, J M Juritz, T T Dunne).

SOCIAL SCIENCE STATISTICS: Research surveys; local government support; analysis of poverty and development (T T Dunne).

OPTIMAL DESIGN: The design of experiments in agriculture, biology and engineering which are in some sense optimal (L M Haines).

ASTROSTATISTICS: The application of statistical techniques to problems in astronomy (MM Varughese).

Undergraduate Courses

NOTES

1. Students may not obtain credit for both STA3008S and either STA2004F or STA2005S.
2. Students who intend to specialise in Statistics are strongly advised to include Computer Science in their curriculum.
3. Note that MAM1000W is a prerequisite for STA3041F, STA3043S, STA3045F and MAM2000W is strongly recommended. Note that MAM2000W is a requirement for all Honours courses in Statistical Sciences.
4. A specialisation in Statistics for the BSc requires STA3041F and STA3043S.
5. A specialisation in Statistics cannot be based on STA2020, STA2030, STA3030 and STA3036.
6. Students may not obtain credit for STA2030S.

First-Year Courses

STA1000F AND STA1000S STATISTICS 1000

Identical first year half-courses, offered in first and second semesters. Owing to the mathematics prerequisites, first-year students must register for STA1000S in the second semester.

Course co-ordinator(s): STA1000F: Ms K Leask; STA1000S: To be advised

Entrance requirements: A pass or concurrent registration in any of MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H or MAM1006H or MAM1000W or MAM1002W or MAM1003W or MAM1012F or STA1001F/S/H.

Course outline:

Exploratory data analysis and summary statistics. Probability theory. Random variables. Probability mass and density functions. Binomial, Poisson, exponential, normal and uniform distributions. Sampling distributions. Confidence intervals. Introduction to hypothesis testing. Tests on means, variances and proportions. Determining sample size. Simple linear regression and measures of correlation.

Lectures: *First semester:* five lectures per week, Monday to Friday, 1st and 4th period.

Second semester: five lectures per week, Monday to Friday, 1st, 2nd, 3rd or 4th period. Students may be required to attend a particular period and venue.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week and 3 to 4 workshops during the semester, at times to be arranged. There is a Statistics Hot Seat in the Statistics Building (Ground Level of PD Hahn Annexe-North Entrance).

DP requirements: Class record of 40%.

Assessment: Class work (test and assignments) counts 35%; one 3-hour examination in June (STA1000F) or November (STA1000S) counts 65%. Candidates awarded a supplementary examination for STA1000F MUST write this examination in the October/November examination period of the same year.

STA1006S STATISTICS FOR MATHEMATICAL DISCIPLINES

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: Mathematics at NSC level 5 (or senior certificate HG D). Concurrent MAM1000W registration.

Course outline:

Types of data variables. Exploratory data analysis. Grouping and graphing of data. Set theory. Probability: conditional probabilities, independence. Bayes theorem. Random variables and values, probability mass and density functions, cumulative distribution functions. Population models and parameters: Binomial, Poisson, Geometric, Negative Binomial, Hypergeometric. Uniform, Exponential. Gaussian, Laplace. Expectation. Moments. Coefficient of variation. Sampling: Sampling distributions t, Gamma, Chi-square, F and their tables. Probability calculations in EXCEL and STATISTICA. Point and interval estimation. Sample size estimation. Hypotheses testing: Z-test and t-test (means, difference between means: matched vs independent samples). F-test (ratio of two independent variances). Chi-square-test. Meaning of p-values. Bivariate data (time series and associated variables): Line graph, scatterplot, simple linear regression and correlation. Transformation. Integral transform. Generation of random samples.

Lectures: Five lectures per week, Monday to Friday, 1st and 4th period.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week and workshops to be arranged.

DP requirements: Attendance and completion of all tests and assignments; class record of 40%.

Assessment: Class record counts 35%; one 3-hour written examination in November counts 65%.

STA1007S BIONUMERACY

This course forms part of the biological specialisations of the BEES & CMCS programmes

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor L Underhill

Entrance requirements: Mathematics at NSC level 4 (or senior certificate HG E/SG C). For foreign students a pass at A-level or a C-symbol at O-Level is required.

Course outline:

Introduction to Biological Statistics; Scientific Method; Computing and Data Manipulation and Presentation; Measures of Central Tendency; Distributions and Functions; Probability Theory; Basic Inferential Statistics; Mathematical Modelling; Introduction to scientific writing. There will be three research projects that will serve as vehicles for instruction in the above areas. Students will be required to collect, manipulate, analyze (using a spreadsheet) and interpret data to answer research questions in a scientific way. Each student will also be required to write a report or part of a report in the format of a scientific journal article. The course is the equivalent of STA1000S, in a biological setting.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

DP requirements: Attendance and completion of all tests and assignments; class record of 40%.

Assessment: Class record counts up to 50%; one 3-hour written examination in November counts at least 50%.

Second-Year Courses

STA2004F STATISTICS 2004

Course co-ordinator(s): To be advised

Entrance requirements: MAM1000W and one of the following, STA1006S.

Course outline:

DISTRIBUTIONS: Univariate and bivariate distributions. Moments (including conditional). Generating functions (moment, probability and cumulant). Convergence in distribution and central limit theorem Transformations of random variables. Sampling distributions from the normal distribution (chi-squared, t, F). Order statistics.

INFERENCE: Estimation. Maximum likelihood. Asymptotic theory. Least squares. Methods of moments. Sufficiency and efficiency. Exponential families. Hypothesis testing and likelihood ratio tests.

Lectures: Monday to Friday 1st period and Tuesday 6th and 7th period.

Tutorials: One compulsory tutorial of 2 hours per week, by arrangement.

DP requirements: Attendance and completion of all tests and assignments, class record of 35% and a minimum of 40% for the project.

Assessment: Class record counts 30%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 70%.

STA2005S STATISTICS 2005

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr B Erni

Entrance requirements: DP certificate for STA2004F.

Course outline:

REGRESSION: The multivariate normal; quadratic forms; the linear model; maximum likelihood; estimates of parameters in the linear model; the Gauss-Markov theorem; variable selection procedures; analysis of residuals.

APPLIED STATISTICS: Non-parametric methods. Design and analysis of experiments. Fixed, mixed and random effects models.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Tutorials: One tutorial per week.

Practicals: One practical per week, by arrangement.

DP requirements: Class record of 35%.

Assessment: Class record counts 30%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 70%.

STA2020F BUSINESS STATISTICS

Note: This course is restricted to students registered for the IT programme (SB006).

Course co-ordinator(s): Mr K Stielau

Entrance requirements: MAM1000W or MAM1004F/H or MAM1005H or MAM1006H or MAM1002W or MAM1012 or MAM1003 and STA1000F/S or STA1006S.

Course outline:

Analysis of variance (ANOVA) and experimental design; Revision and extension of simple linear regression; Multiple regression; Econometric models; Time series analysis; Non-parametric statistics.

Lectures: Monday to Friday 1st, 3rd or 5th period.

Tutorials: Tutorials/Workshops by arrangement.

DP requirements: At least 50% for class record and satisfactory completion of the project.

Assessment: Class record counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June/November counts 60%.

Third-Year Courses

STA3041F STATISTICS 3041

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor L M Haines

Entrance requirements: STA2004F and STA2005S, MAM2000W recommended (linear algebra and advanced calculus modules).

Course outline:

Markov Processes: Discrete Markov chains; application to experience rating; Poisson and renewal processes; continuous time Markov chains; Theory of Markov processes; Ruin theory.

Time Series Analysis: General concepts; filters; backward shift operators; concepts of AR, ARMA and ARIMA models; frequency domain analysis; multivariate autogressive models; identification, estimation and diagnosis of time series models; non-stationary and non-linear models; applications.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Tutorials: Monday and Wednesday, 6th and 7th period.

DP requirements: Class record of 35% and submission of all projects.

Assessment: Class record counts 30%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 70%.

STA3043S STATISTICS 3043

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr F Little

Entrance requirements: STA2004F and STA2005S; MAM1000W (MAM2000W strongly recommended).

Course outline:

Decision and Risk Theory: Structure of decision making under uncertainty; game theory and non-probabilistic decision criteria; probabilistic decision criteria: expected value and utility; use of Bayes' theorem; value of information; Bayesian statistical analysis for Bernoulli and normal sampling; empirical Bayes and credibility theory; loss and extreme value distributions; Monte Carlo method.

Generalized Linear Models: Definition of a generalized linear model; estimation and testing procedures; applications including logistic regression and log-linear models.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 1 1 1 1 1

Tutorials: Monday and Wednesday, 6th and 7th period.

DP requirements: Class record of 35% and submission of all projects.

Assessment: Class record counts 30%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 70%.

STA3045F MARKOV PROCESSES & ADVANCED TIME SERIES

NOTE: This course does not form part of the compulsory requirements for the specialisation in Statistics.

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor R K Guo

Entrance requirements: STA1006S, STA2004F, STA2005S and concurrent registration for STA3041F and MAM2000W.

Course outline:

This course will cater to the needs of Actuarial Science students.

Module 1: Foundations of stochastic processes, Markov processes, Markov jump processes, two-state and general Markov models. (Lectures will be held simultaneously with BUS3018F).

Module 2: Advanced Time Series. (Content presumes prior experience of STA3041F Time Series).

Lectures: Five lectures per week. Refer department.

Tutorials: One tutorial per week. Refer department.

DP requirements: Class record of 40% and submission of all projects.

Assessment: Class record counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

Postgraduate Courses

STA4007W BSc (HONS) IN STATISTICAL SCIENCES

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr F Little

Entrance requirements: Completion of STA2004F, STA2005S, STA3041F, STA3043S, or their deemed equivalents, at a satisfactory level (normally an average of 65% or more in the 3rd year courses at first attempt), as well as a pass in MAM2000W. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of final year results, material covered in the undergraduate curriculum, and possibly referee reports. Preference may be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements. Enrolments are limited to 22 in all, for the combined Honours program made up of STA4007W, STA4019H, STA4006W and STA4010W.

Course outline:

Course requirements are based on an internal departmental credit system in which a 24-lecture module at 4th year level is granted 2 credits. Students are required to complete the following:

Core courses: 12 credits

Elective courses: ≥ 6 credits

Individual project: 6 credits

The core modules include statistical computing, matrix methods, theory of statistics, operations research and professional communication. Available electives vary from year to year, but typically include a variety of applied and theoretical topics in statistics, econometrics and operations research.

Assessment: Each coursework module comprises of tests, assignments and a final examination. The relative weighting placed on the year work within different modules varies between 30% and 50%. The final grade for STA4007W as a whole is a weighted average (3 : 1) of the combined final marks for each coursework module (weighted by the number of credits), and the individual project. In addition, the student is required to obtain a mark of at least 50% in all core courses, at least 40% in best 6 credits for elective modules and at least 50% for the individual project.

STA4019H STATISTICAL SCIENCES FOR ACTUARIES

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr F Little

Entrance requirements: Completion of STA2004F, STA2005S, STA3041F, STA3043S, or their deemed equivalents, at a satisfactory level (normally an average of 65% or more in the 3rd year

128 DEPARTMENT OF STATISTICAL SCIENCES

courses at first attempt), as well as a pass in MAM2000W. In addition, admission to STA4019H requires that the student is admitted by the Actuarial Science Division of the School of Management Studies to BUS4027W and BUS4028F. Acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of final year results, material covered in the undergraduate curriculum, and possibly referee reports. Preference may be given to UCT students who meet the entrance requirements. Enrolments are limited to 22 in all, for the combined Honours program made up of STA4007W, STA4019H, STA4006W and STA4010W.

Course outline:

This course constitutes 65% of the requirement for the BSc (Hons) in Actuarial Science. Course requirements are based on an internal departmental credit system in which a 24-lecture module at 4th year level is granted 2 credits. Students are required to complete the following:

Core courses: 4 credits

Elective courses: ≥ 6 credits

Individual project: 6 credits

The core modules include statistical computing, matrix methods, theory of statistics, operations research and professional communication. Available electives vary from year to year, but typically include a variety of applied and theoretical topics in statistics, econometrics and operations research.

Assessment: Each coursework module comprises of tests, assignments and a final examination. The relative weighting placed on the year work within different modules varies between 30% and 50%. The final grade for STA4019H as a whole is a weighted average (5 : 3) of the combined final marks for each coursework module (weighted by the number of credits), and the individual project. In addition, the student is required to obtain a mark of at least 50% in all core courses, at least 40% in best 6 credits for elective modules and at least 50% for the individual project. In addition the courses BUS4027W and BUS4028F must also be passed for the degree to be awarded.

STA5000W MASTERS IN MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS

This degree may be conferred after satisfactory completion of a dissertation embodying research under the guidance of an approved supervisor. The normal duration of the course is two years although, under exceptional circumstances, may be completed in one and a half years. General rules for this degree may be found in the beginning of the handbook.

STA5001W MASTERS IN OPERATIONAL RESEARCH

This degree may be conferred after satisfactory completion of a dissertation embodying research under the guidance of an approved supervisor. The normal duration of the course is two years although, under exceptional circumstances, may be completed in one and a half years. General rules for this degree may be found in the beginning of the handbook.

STA5003W and STA5004W MASTERS IN STATISTICAL SCIENCES

(by coursework & dissertation)

NOTE: This course may not be offered in 2009

For this taught MSc programme, candidates are required to complete coursework STA5003W given at a Master's level at the end of which they will sit and pass formal examinations. They are also required to submit a mini-dissertation (STA5004W), which is normally considered as a half dissertation (one year of study), for which a pass is the requirement for the MSc degree. General rules for completion of the masters by coursework and dissertation may be found at the beginning of the handbook.

Entrance requirements: A relevant Honours degree.

Deadlines for Applications for the following year: International Students, 30th September and local students, 31st October.

STA5010W and STA5011W MASTERS IN OPERATIONAL RESEARCH IN DEVELOPMENT

(by coursework & dissertation)

NOTE: This course may not be offered in 2009

Course Objectives: The aim of the programme is to provide a broad professional training in the principles and tools of operational research (OR), with particular emphasis on application in the context of development and the developing world. Operational Research has been defined as the discipline of applying advanced analytical methods (system analysis, and computer and mathematical models) to help make better decisions. The OR in Development programme focuses on preparing graduates for a career in applying OR to the unique problems of the developing world, such as conflicting objectives in balancing (for examples) socio-economic development and corrective actions, less reliable infrastructures, and a post-colonial need for community participation in all levels of planning.

Entrance requirements: Entry to the programme requires a good honours degree including a strong quantitative component (normally at least two years of Mathematics at a tertiary level). In selecting candidates for admission to the programme, consideration will also be given to recommendations from at least two referees who are able to attest to the applicants academic abilities and suitability for the programme.

Curriculum: The programme is structured over two years, although completion in 18 months may be possible.

The first academic year is based primarily on coursework, supplemented by group discussions and case studies. The course work includes the basic techniques of operational research and statistics, specific developmental issues, problem structuring and decision analysis.

On successful completion of the coursework component, students will undertake an individual applied project on a suitable topic, the results of which are to be written up as a dissertation. In some cases, the project might be undertaken on a local problem at the student's home base.

Assessment: In order to qualify for the MSc degree, the student will need to pass both the coursework and dissertation. A pass for the coursework requires an average of 50% over all modules, as well as a minimum of 50% for certain modules designated as core material.

STA6001W PhD IN STATISTICAL SCIENCES

Supervision of research work towards this degree is provided by the Department. Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in book 3, General Rules and Policies.

DEPARTMENT OF ZOOLOGY

The Department is housed in the John Day Zoology Building, 20 University Avenue

Telephone (021) 650-3603/4 Fax (021) 650-3301

The Percy Fitzpatrick Institute of African Ornithology may be reached on telephone (021) 650-3291.

The Departmental abbreviation for Zoology is ZOO. Courses jointly offered with the Botany department are designated BIO.

The Animal Demography Unit may be reached on telephone (021) 650-2423.

Associate Professor and Head of Department:

J H Hoffmann, MSc PhD *Rhodes*

Emeritus Professors:

G M Branch, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* FRSSAf

J G Field, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* FRSSAf

Emeritus Associate Professors:

B R Davies, BSc (Hons) *Newcastle* PhD *CNAA* MSAIE & ES

J U M Jarvis, MSc *Cape Town* PhD *East Africa* FRSSAf

Pola Pazwolsky Chair of Conservation Biology:

G Cumming, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes* DPhil *Oxon*

South African Research Chair in Animal Evolution and Systematics:

D S Jacobs, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Hawaii*

South African Research Chair in Marine Ecology & Fisheries:

A Jarre, MSc *Kiel* PhD *Bremen*

Professors:

A Chinsamy-Turan, BSc (Hons) PhD *Wits*

T M Crowe, MSc *Chicago* PhD *Cape Town*

G Gäde, MS PhD *Munster*

C L Griffiths, BSc (Hons) *Soton* PhD *Cape Town*

P A R Hockey, BSc (Hons) *Edinburgh* PhD *Cape Town*

Associate Professors:

C Attwood BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

J A Day, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* MSAIE & ES

P G Ryan, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Honorary Research Associates:

C Krugg, BSc *Marburg* PhD *Bonn*

K Tolley, MSc *Massachusetts* DSc *Bergen*

Senior Lecturers:

G N Bronner, MSc PhD *Natal*

M I Lucas, BSc (Hons) PhD *Wales*

C L Moloney, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

M J O'Riain, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

M D Picker, BSc (Hons) PhD *Wits*

Lecturers:

J Bishop, BSc (Hons) *King's College London* PhD *Cape Town*

H Marco, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

D Pillay, BSc (Hons) PhD *UKZN*

C Reed, MSc PhD *UFS*

Principal Technical Officer:

A Plos, BSc *Cape Town*

Chief Technical Officers:

G Du Plessis

P Müller

Chief Scientific Officer:

L V Phigeland, BSc *Cape Town*

Administrative Officer:

M Ledeboer

Senior Secretary:

Administrative Assistants:

C April

L F Mansfield

Laboratory Assistants:

G Faulmann

MARINE BIOLOGY RESEARCH CENTRE**Director:**C L Griffiths, BSc (Hons) *Soton* PhD *Cape Town***Associates:**J J Bolton, BSc (Hons) PhD *Liverpool*G M Branch, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* FRSSAfJ G Field, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* FRSSAfA Jarre, MSc Kiel PhD *Bremen*M I Lucas, BSc (Hons) PhD *Wales*C L Moloney, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*D Pillay, BSc (Hons) PhD *UKZN***Honorary Research Associates:**J Augustyn, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*D Durholtz, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*J Harris, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*K Hutchings, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*L Shannon, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*C N Steffani, MSc *Hamburg* PhD *Cape Town*C van der Lingen, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town***Scientific Officers:**G E Smith BSc *Cape Town***FRESHWATER RESEARCH UNIT****Director:**J A Day, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* MSAIE & ES**Chief Research Officers:**H Malan, MSc *UPE* PhD *Cape Town***Scientific Officers:**J Ewert-Smith, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town***Research Affiliates:**M A Amis, BSc *Moi*, MSc *Cape Town*H F Dallas, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*E G Day, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*N Job, BA *UKZN* HDE *Cape Town*J M King, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town* MSAIE & ESD Ollis, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town* MSc *Stell*

P Pashnee

B Paxton, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town*G Ractliffe, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town***WEED BIOLOGICAL CONTROL UNIT****Chief Research Officer:**J H Hoffmann, MSc PhD *Rhodes*

Scientific Officers:

F A C Impson, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes*

C A Kleinjan, MSc *Cape Town*

V C Moran, MSc PhD *Rhodes* FRES FLS FRSSAf

THE PERCY FITZPATRICK INSTITUTE OF AFRICAN ORNITHOLOGY

Director:

P A R Hockey, BSc (Hons) *Edinburgh* PhD *Cape Town*

Emeritus Professor:

W R Siegfried, PhD *Cape Town*

Honorary Professors:

D Cumming, BSc (Hons) PhD *Rhodes*

S Milton, BA BSc *Cape Town* BSc (Hons) *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

Pola Pazwolsky Chair of Conservation Biology:

G Cumming, BSc (Hons) *Rhodes* DPhil *Oxon*

Professor:

T M Crowe, MSc *Chicago* PhD *Cape Town*

Associate Professor:

P G Ryan, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

Senior Lecturer:

J K Turpie, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

Manager, Centre of Excellence:

P Lloyd, MSc *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

Honorary Research Associates:

P Barnard, MSc *Wits* PhD *Upsala*

A R Jenkins, BSc (Hons) *Pietermaritzburg* PhD *Cape Town*

A Kemp, PhD *Rhodes*

R Simmons, MSc *Acadia* PhD *Wits*

Research Affiliates:

P Bloomer, PhD *Virginia*

R C K Bowie, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

R Covas, MSc *Lisbon* PhD *Cape Town*

W R J Dean, MSc *Natal* PhD *Cape Town*

T Mandiwana-Neudani, BSc (Hons) *Venda* MSc *Cape Town*

A McKechnie, PhD *Natal*

A Milewski, MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Murdoch*

C O'Ryan, BSc (Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

L Roxburgh, BSc (Hons) *Pietermaritzburg* PhD *Ben Gurion*

C Spottiswoode, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Cantab*

Postdoctoral Fellows:

M de Melo, MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Edinburgh*

J Fuchs, PhD *MNH*

L Pichegru, PhD *Strasbourg*

A Ridley, BSc (Hons) *Lincoln* PhD *Cantab*

H Smit, PhD *Stell*

N M S M Techow, PhD *Cape Town*

Principal Technical Officer:

C J Tobler

Librarian:

M M Sandwith Koopman, BA *Unisa* HDipLib Info Sci MSc *Natal*

Administrative Assistant:

H Buchanan, BA H Dip Lib *Cape Town*

Senior Secretary:

T Jansen

Departmental/Accounts Assistant:

L Mansfield

ANIMAL DEMOGRAPHY UNIT

(located on floor 2 of the P D Hahn Annexe)

Director:L G Underhill, MSc PhD *Cape Town***Honorary Associate Professor:**R J M Crawford, MSc PhD *Cape Town***Honorary Research Associates:**R Altwegg, MSc PhD *Zurich*P Barham, MSc PhD *Bristol*J Cooper, BSc (Hons) *London*J A Harris, BSc (Hons) MSc *Cape Town*J P Roux, MSc PhD *Montpellier*A J Williams, MSc PhD *Cape Town***Senior Scientific Officer:**R A Navarro, MSc *Austral de Chile***Research Assistants:**

M Brooks, Nat Dipl in Conservation

M Burger, Nat Dipl in Nature Conservation

M de Villiers, MSc PhD *Pretoria*D M Harebottle, MSc *Natal*S Kuyper, BA *Natal HDLS Unisa*S Mecenaro, MSc PhD *Cape Town*H D Oschadleus, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

L Tsipa

M Wheeler, BTech *CPUT*M T E Wren-Sargent, BA HDE *Natal PG Dip LIS Cape Town*D J Young, MSc *Cape Town***RESEARCH IN ZOOLOGY**

The Department of Zoology specialises in ecology and conservation biology. In the marine field, research concentrates on the ecology of rocky shores (C L Griffiths), the upwelling zone off the Cape west coast (M I Lucas) and the management of living marine resources (C L Moloney). The Marine Biological Research Institute (Director C L Griffiths) co-ordinates and stimulates marine biological research at the University of Cape Town. Studies on the biology and management of inland waters (J A Day, J M King, H L Malan and C Reed) are co-ordinated within the Freshwater Research Unit (Director J A Day), with emphasis on the functioning of rivers and wetlands in the face of human interference.

The ethology, physiology and ecology of terrestrial vertebrates, particularly small mammals, are studied by D S Jacobs, G Bronner and J O'Riain; G Gade and H Marco specialise in arthropod physiology, particularly endocrinology; M D Picker focuses on insect ecology and systematics; and J H Hoffmann and V C Moran on the biological control of invasive alien plants pests. A Chinsamy-Turan elucidates the biology of extinct vertebrates by analysing their bone structure.

The Department includes the Percy FitzPatrick Institute of African Ornithology, which is involved in a wide range of research topics on avian evolutionary and behavioural ecology and conservation biology (T M Crowe, G S Cumming, P A R Hockey, P Lloyd, P G Ryan). The Percy Fitzpatrick Institute has been awarded the status of Centre of Excellence by the National Department of Science and Technology and the National Research Foundation.

The Animal Demography Unit (ADU) is a research group within the department. With its roots in statistics, the ADU's main research focus is in the development of models for biological systems, and in the collection and analysis of data used for these models. The ADU coordinates several

national biodiversity initiatives (bird, butterfly and reptile atlases, the national bird ringing unit, and bird monitoring projects).

Undergraduate Courses

Note: Supplementary examinations are not normally granted to students for senior courses in Zoology.

First-Year Courses

BIO1000F CELL BIOLOGY

See course details under Department of Botany.

AGE1003H FOUNDATIONS OF BIOLOGY, EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES

A course for students on the General Entry for Programmes in Science (GEPS) providing a general introduction to the study of the earth and its living and non-living systems.

See course details under Department of Archaeology.

BIO1004S BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

This course is available to all undergraduates.

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor A Chinsamy-Turan

Entrance requirements: BIO1000F or a pass in Life Sciences at NSC level 4 (or a senior certificate pass in Biology) or by permission of the Head of the Zoology Department.

Course outline:

An investigation of a range of plants and animals to illustrate the diversity and complexity of living things. Historical evidence and evolution as a means of interpreting change with time. Modern theories on the mechanism of evolution. The origin of species, including humans. Interdependence of organisms in South African biomes. Plant/animal symbiosis, mutualism and parasitism.

Period

Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri

Lectures: 5 5 5 5 5

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday or Thursday, 14h00-17h00. Practical will examine animal and plant diversity.

Fieldwork: A compulsory one-day excursion will be held over a weekend.

DP requirements: Attendance at all practicals and an average of 50% for the practical record.

Assessment: Class record counts 40%; one 2-hour theory paper written in November counts 40% (subminimum of 40% applies); one 1.5-hour practical examination written in November counts 20%.

Second-Year Courses

BIO2003S ECOPHYSIOLOGY: HOW PLANTS & ANIMALS WORK

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr H Marco

Entrance requirements: BIO1000F, BIO1004S, 40% in CEM1000W or completion of CEM1009H.

Course outline:

The course provides an understanding of basic physiological processes in plants and animals from cellular to organismal level. It draws on the structural and functional similarities and dissimilarities between plants and animals in respect of topics such as nutrition, gas exchange, transport of water and nutrients (plants), osmoregulation and water relations (animals) and chemical communication, presented in an ecological and evolutionary framework.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 3 3 3 3**Tutorials:** Optional, one per week, Friday, 3rd period.**Practicals:** One per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00, or by arrangement.**Fieldwork:** There will be a compulsory field camp.**DP requirements:** Minimum of 40% for class record; attendance at 2/3 of practicals; attendance at all class tests and submission of all assignments.**Assessment:** Class record counts 50%; one 2-hour written examination in November counts 30%; one 2-hour written practical in November counts 20%. A sub-minimum of 40% must be attained in the examinations.**BIO2004F PRINCIPLES OF ECOLOGY****Course co-ordinator(s):** Professor C L Griffiths**Entrance requirements:** BIO1000F, BIO1004S.**Course outline:**

Topics include the ecology of individuals, populations and communities, plant-animal interactions and the ecology of marine, freshwater and terrestrial biomes. In addition to formal lectures, practicals and tutorials, a compulsory 5-day field camp is held during the Easter vacation.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 4 4 4 4**Tutorials:** Optional, one per week, Friday 4th period.**Practicals:** One practical per week, Monday, 14h00-17h00.**DP requirements:** Minimum of 40% for class record; attendance at field camp; submission of classwork assignments by due date.**Assessment:** Class record counts 50%; one 2-hour theory paper written during term time counts 50% (a subminimum of 40% is required on the theory paper).**BIO2006F MARINE & TERRESTRIAL PLANT DIVERSITY**

See course details under Department of Botany.

BIO2008S PRINCIPLES OF EVOLUTION

See course details under Department of Botany.

BIO2009S INVERTEBRATES**Course co-ordinator(s):** To be advised**Entrance requirements:** BIO1000F and BIO1004S.**Course outline:**

Invertebrates, overwhelmingly the most diverse animal group, have successfully exploited both terrestrial and aquatic habitats. Lectures contrast invertebrate adaptations for feeding, respiration, excretion, sensory systems, reproduction and locomotion across the two major habitats, and include a review of the phylogenetic interrelationships of all invertebrates in either terrestrial (largely insects) or marine invertebrates. Students will decide which stream they intend to follow, and will attend a compulsory field camp that will form the basis of their project, with the focus on either insects, fresh water invertebrates, or marine invertebrates.

Period**Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri****Lectures:** 4 4 4 4**Tutorials:** One per week, Friday, 4th period.

Practicals: One practical per week, Monday, 14h00-17h00.

Fieldwork: There will be a compulsory field camp.

DP requirements: Attendance at all class tests and submission of all assignments.

Assessment: Tests counts 30%; practicals and project counts 20%; one 2-hour written/theory examination in November counts 50%. Final examinations have a sub-minimum of 40%.

Third-Year Courses

BIO3002S MARINE ECOLOGY

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr M I Lucas

Entrance requirements: CEM1000W (or equivalent) and BIO2004F, BIO2005S, STA1007S (or STA1000F/S) recommended; otherwise by arrangement with the course convenor.

Course outline:

The course includes an introduction to: the South African marine environment, biological oceanography, plankton ecology, benthic ecology, mariculture, fisheries biology (with special attention to major South African fisheries), sandy beach ecology, estuarine ecology and rocky shore ecology. Special topics are covered in seminars. In addition to formal lectures, tutorials and set practicals, students are required to undertake field work and a research project. There is a compulsory 4-day field camp during registration week.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	3	3	3	3	3
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00.

DP requirements: Attendance at all class tests and submission of all assignments.

Assessment: Class record counts 50%; one 3-hour theory paper written in November counts 50% (a sub-minimum of 40% is required).

BIO3003S INLAND WATER ECOSYSTEMS

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr C Reed

Entrance requirements: BIO1004S, CEM1000W or equivalent and BIO2004F; ZOO2001S or BIO2005S and STA1007S (or STA1000F/S) recommended; otherwise by arrangement with the course convenor (may be taken in third academic year of study only).

Course outline:

The course addresses the ecology, conservation and management of inland water ecosystems, including rivers, wetlands, lakes, reservoirs and estuaries. Topics include ecosystem processes, ecology of populations and communities, the ecological impacts of human disturbance on fresh waters, and management and conservation issues. A field trip during the last week of the midyear vacation is compulsory. The field camp limits intake to 36 students.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	2	2	2	2	2
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: Two practicals per week, one on Monday, 14h00-17h00, the other by arrangement.

DP requirements: Attendance at field camp; submission of all course assignments by due date.

Assessment: Class record counts 50%; one 3-hour theory examination paper counts 35%; one 2-hour written practical examination in term time counts 10%; an oral in November counts 5%. A subminimum of 40% is required.

BIO3005S MOLECULAR ECOLOGY

See course details under Department of Botany.

BIO3010F SYSTEMATICS & MACRO EVOLUTION

See course details under Department of Botany.

BIO3012F VERTEBRATES: BIOLOGY & BEHAVIOURAL ECOLOGY*Replaces BIO3001F & BIO3004F***Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr G N Bronner**Entrance requirements:** BIO1000F, BIO1004S, BIO2004F or BIO2005S or BIO2002S or BIO2009S; STA1007S (or STA1000F/S) recommended; otherwise by arrangement with the course co-ordinator.**Course outline:**

The course will familiarise students with the evolution, functional biology and behavioural ecology of vertebrates. It covers the diversity and life habits of all vertebrate classes, paying particular attention to how these have adapted to the environments in which they live, and the morphological innovations that underlay the major vertebrate radiations (25 lectures). The rest of the course comprises integrative, cross-taxonomic modules on homeostasis, sensory systems, locomotion, reproduction and behavioural ecology.

Students are required to undertake one of five research projects on the behavioural ecology of vertebrates that will target species living on campus or in/about Cape Town, and will require part-time data collection throughout most of the semester. Some of the practicals will be devoted to workshops on project design, data analysis, presentation skills and writing skills, to interface with the research projects.

Period

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
--	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Lectures:	4	4	4	4	4
------------------	---	---	---	---	---

Practicals: Two practicals per week: Friday, and Monday or Tuesday, 14h00-17h00.**DP requirements:** Attendance at all class tests and submission of all assignments by due dates.**Assessment:** Class record counts 50%; one 3-hour theory paper and one 4-hour practical examination written in June each count 25% (a subminimum of 40% applies for the combined (theory+practical) examination mark).

Postgraduate Courses

NOTE: In addition to submitting an application to the University, prospective applicants to all Zoology postgraduate courses MUST contact the Zoology Department. Failure to do so might result in applications not being received by the department in time for consideration.

A requirement for the completion of the MSc and PhD degree is that students give a departmental seminar. On graduating they are also expected to give a short presentation at the Graduation Symposium on the day of their graduation.

ZOO4000W BSc (HONS) IN ZOOLOGY**Course co-ordinator(s):** Dr M J O'Riain and Associate Professor J A Day**Entrance requirements:** A BSc degree specialising in Zoology or related field. Registrations are limited to 15, and acceptance will be at the discretion of the Head of Department who will consider quality of final year results, material covered in the undergraduate curriculum, and referee reports in making decisions. Preference will be given to UCT graduates who meet the entrance requirements.**Course outline:**

A training in research methodology and execution including two original research projects. The honours course is designed to enrich the students' appreciation of theory through advanced coursework, seminars, discussion groups and fieldwork. There will be a compulsory field camp in late January/early February focussing on field methods. A compulsory core module includes biostatistics, the history and philosophy of science, molecular genetics and communication techniques.

DP requirements: Attendance at field camp; submission of all course assignments by due date.

Assessment: Class record counts 75% and includes a compulsory module (25%) and two research projects (50%); two 3-hour theory examinations (10% each) and one oral examination (5%) in November.

ZOO5000W MASTERS IN ZOOLOGY

A training in research techniques leading to a dissertation. General rules for this degree may be found at the front of this handbook.

ZOO5003H and ZOO5004W MASTERS IN CONSERVATION BIOLOGY

(by coursework and dissertation)

Course co-ordinator(s): Professor G S Cumming and Associate Professor P G Ryan

Course outline:

A one year intensive programme deals with the conservation and biologically sustainable and economically viable use of biodiversity. It provides the education and training necessary to identify threatened species, ecosystems and ecological processes, and to develop appropriate measures to mitigate against, or reduce the effects of, particular threats to biodiversity. From a utilisation perspective, it focuses on biological and socio-economic criteria necessary to select species and areas of utilisation and the development of appropriate management and monitoring strategies. This programme is intended for students concerned with both the theory and practise of conservation and consists of two components. Component 1 (ZOO5003H) is a series of modules covering a range of fields of conservation biology: philosophy of science and conservation ethics; community ecology, population ecology, biodiversity basics, ecosystem/aquatic ecology, molecular ecology, disturbance and restoration ecology, invasive species, complex systems concepts, landscape ecology, GIS and conservation planning, climate change and conservation, resource economics, societies and natural resources and decision analysis. Each student receives a mark for each of the modules, and the modules are examined in groups during 'open-book' examinations. Component 2 is a research project (ZOO5004W) which must be submitted as a dissertation. A pass in both components is required for the degree. It should be completed by mid-February following first registration. Those students already in possession of an MSc degree, or in exceptional cases those who wish to upgrade to a PhD, may expand a project in accord with the normal pursuit of that degree at UCT (see below). A handbook for the programme is available from the Director, Percy FitzPatrick Institute or from the Institute's website: www.fitzpatrick.uct.ac.za.

ZOO5005H and ZOO5006W MASTERS IN APPLIED MARINE SCIENCE

(by coursework and dissertation)

Course co-ordinator(s): Dr C L Moloney

Course outline:

The objective of this MSc by coursework and dissertation is to provide skills and specialised knowledge appropriate for a broad range of disciplines in marine science. The course is intended for professional scientists interested in applied aspects of marine science, where broadly-based, practical skills are required, often in a management context. The course has two components. Component 1 (ZOO5005H) runs for approximately 7-8 months, and consists of a series of modules. Students are engaged full-time with activities relating to the modules. Topics include coastal and shelf oceanography, marine ecology, quantitative methods, biostatistics, marine policy and law, project management, health of the oceans, ocean circulation, building a habitable planet, ecosystem approach to fisheries management, decision analysis, meteorology and oceans and integrated coastal management. The modules are conducted in a classroom setting involving lectures and tutorials, and field and laboratory practicals.

Each student is assessed on each module, with formal marks for essays, presentations and mini-projects, and in some cases for class tests. Two formal examinations are used to assess progress, and to consolidate the material covered in the completed modules. The research undertaken in

component 2 (ZOO5006W) must be submitted as a dissertation. The expected duration of the research component is 5-6 months. A pass in both components is required for the degree.

DP requirements: Satisfactory completion of each module, and a pass in the first examination; we reserve the right to ask students to leave part way through the course if their progress is deemed unsatisfactory.

Assessment: Both coursework and dissertation components must be passed separately for the degree to be awarded. Of the coursework component, class assessments will count 60% and two formal examinations will count 40%.

ZOO5009W MASTERS IN CONSERVATION BIOLOGY

A training in research leading to a dissertation in the field of conservation biology. General rules for this degree may be found at the front of this handbook.

ZOO6000W PhD IN ZOOLOGY

This research degree is offered in a number of specialised zoological fields, eg. marine ecology, animal behaviour, freshwater biology, ornithology, entomology, mammalogy and environmental physiology. Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

ZOO6002W PhD IN CONSERVATION BIOLOGY

This is a research degree in all aspects of conservation biology. Candidates are referred to the rules for this degree as set out in Book 3, General Rules and Policies.

INTER-FACULTY UNIT

Electron Microscope Unit

Director:

Associate Professor B T Sewell, MSc *Witwatersrand* PhD *Lond*

Chief Scientific Officer:

B Price, BSc (Hons) PhD *Natal*

Principal Technical Officer (Part-time):

J Duncan

Chief Technical Officers:

M A Jaffer, BSc (Hons) *Cape Town*

M Waldron, BSc (Hons) *Swansea* MSc *Cape Town*

Photographic Assistant:

S Karriem

The Electron Microscope Unit is housed in the R W James Building at 9 University Avenue and provides scanning and transmission electron microscopy facilities for staff and research students in all faculties. The Unit has a Leica S440 scanning electron microscope equipped with an extensive range of accessories including an X-ray analyser, cathodoluminescence spectrometer and cryo preparative facility. The Unit also has a LEO 912 EFTEM with incolumn energy filter and 2k x 2kx CCD camera to support tomographic applications in structural biology. Other microscopes in the unit include the JEOL 200CX and JEOL 1200 EXII cryo TEM transmission electron microscopes and the Cambridge S200 scanning electron microscope, equipped with electron back-scattered diffraction pattern analysis. Associated preparative, darkroom, light microscopy and library facilities are also provided. Enquiries regarding the use of these facilities are welcome.

Courses in aspects of electron microscopy are offered to any University member who wishes to make use of the Unit's facilities for the purpose of research. Details of these courses, which are held throughout the year, may be obtained from the Unit. The Unit is also able to provide information and advice on a wide range of microscopy related topics. More detailed information is available at <http://www.uct.ac.za/depts/emu>.

SCHEDULE OF COURSES, ENTRANCE REQUIREMENTS, LECTURE AND PRACTICAL TIMES

LECTURE PERIODS

The academic day is divided into lecture periods as follows:

Period 1	08h00 to 08h45	Meridian	13h00 to 13h45
Period 2	09h00 to 09h45	Period 6	14h00 to 14h45
Period 3	10h00 to 10h45	Period 7	15h00 to 15h45
Period 4	11h00 to 11h45	Period 8	16h00 to 16h45
Period 5	12h00 to 12h45	Period 9	17h00 to 17h45

NOTE: Students registered for the SCIB03 degree must refer to the rules for the curriculum (Rule FB12) to ascertain which courses are classified under Lists 1, 2 and 3.

COURSE CODE	COURSE TITLE	LECTURE TIMES	PRACTICAL/ TUTORIAL TIMES	ENTRANCE REQUIREMENTS
AGE1002S	AFRICA & WORLD ARCHAEOLOGY	5 M to Th	See departmental entry	None
AGE1003H	FOUNDATIONS OF BIOLOGY, EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES	2 M to F	One practical per week, F 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
AGE2011S	HUMAN EVOLUTION	2 M to Th	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
AGE2012F	SOUTHERN AFRICAN HUNTERS & HERDERS	2 M to Th	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
AGE3006H	DIRECTED READING & RESEARCH	By arrangement	none	See departmental entry
AGE3011F	ROOTS OF BLACK IDENTITY	4 M to Th	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
AGE3012S	GLOBAL INTERACTION & THE TRANSFORMATION OF SOUTH AFRICAN SOCIETY	4 M to Th	One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged	See departmental entry
AGE3013H	ARCHAEOLOGY IN PRACTICE	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
APG1015F	PROGRAMMING FOR GEOMATICS	4 M to F	W 6th to 8th	none
APG1016S	GEOMATICS 1	4 M to F	W 6th to 8th	APG1015F or CSC1015F or equivalent
APG2014S	GEOMATICS II	3 M to F	M 6th to 8th	See departmental entry
APG2015F	GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS I	3 M to F	M 6th to 8th	See departmental entry
APG2018X	GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS CAMP	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
APG2026F	ELEMENTARY SURVEYING	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
APG3011F	GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS II	4 M to F	Tu 6th to 8th	See departmental entry
APG3012S	GEOMATICS III	5 M to F	M 6th to 8th	See departmental entry
APG3016C	SURVEYING II	3 M to F	W 6th to 8th	See departmental entry
APG3020X	SPATIAL DATA	See departmental	See departmental	See departmental entry

142 SCHEDULE OF COURSES

	ANALYSIS PROJECT	entry	entry	
APG4004A	REMOTE SENSING	1 M to F	Th 6th to 8th	See departmental entry
AST1000F	INTRODUCTION TO ASTRONOMY	5 M to F	See departmental entry	None
AST2002S	ASTROPHYSICS	2 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
AST3002F	STELLAR ASTROPHYSICS	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
AST3003S	GALACTIC & EXTRAGALACTIC ASTROPHYSICS	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
BIO1000F	CELL BIOLOGY	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
BIO1004S	BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
BIO2003S	ECOPHYSIOLOGY: HOW PLANTS & ANIMALS WORK	3 M to Th	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
BIO2004F	PRINCIPLES OF ECOLOGY	4 M to Th	See departmental entry	BIO1000F, BIO1004S
BIO2006F	MARINE & TERRESTRIAL PLANT DIVERSITY	2 M to F	See departmental entry	BIO1000F, BIO1004S
BIO2008S	PRINCIPLES OF EVOLUTION	2 M to F	See departmental entry	BIO1000F, BIO1004S
BIO2009S	INVERTEBRATES	4 M to Th	See departmental entry	BIO1000F and BIO1004S
BIO3002S	MARINE ECOLOGY	3 M to F	One practical per week, W, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
BIO3003S	INLAND WATER ECOSYSTEMS	2 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
BIO3005S	MOLECULAR ECOLOGY	2 M to F	See departmental entry	BIO3010F or MCB3019F
BIO3006F	ECOSYSTEM ECOLOGY	3 M to F	By arrangement	See departmental entry
BIO3010F	SYSTEMATICS & MACRO EVOLUTION	2 M to F	See departmental entry	BIO2007S or MCB2018F
BIO3011S	GLOBAL CHANGE ECOLOGY	4 M to F	See departmental entry See departmental entry	See departmental entry
BIO3012F	VERTEBRATES: BIOLOGY & BEHAVIOURAL ECOLOGY	4 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CEM1000W	CHEMISTRY 1000	2 or 4 M to W, F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CEM1009H	CHEMISTRY 1009	4 W to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CEM1010F	CHEMISTRY 1010	4 M to F	See departmental entry	CEM1009H
CEM2007F	PHYSICAL CHEMISTRY & SPECTROSCOPY	3 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CEM2008S	ORGANIC & INORGANIC CHEMISTRY	3 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CEM2013S	CHEMISTRY IN HEALTH & DISEASE	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CEM3005W	CHEMISTRY 3005	3 M to F	Two practicals per week, W and	See departmental entry

SCHEDULE OF COURSES 143

			F, 14h00-17h00	
CSC1010H	COMPUTER SCIENCE 1010	5 M to Th	One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h30	See departmental entry
CSC1011H	COMPUTER SCIENCE 1011	4 M to Th	One practical per week, Mondays, 14h00-17h30	CSC1010H, MAM1005H
CSC1015F	COMPUTER SCIENCE 1015	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CSC1016S	COMPUTER SCIENCE 1016	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CSC1018F	COMPUTER SCIENCE 1018	4 M and F	One practical per week	See departmental entry
CSC2001F	COMPUTER SCIENCE 2001	2 M to F	One 4-hour practical per week, Monday to Friday, 14h00-18h00	See departmental entry
CSC2002S	COMPUTER SCIENCE 2002	2 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CSC2003S	COMPUTER GAMES	3 M to F	See departmental entry	CSC2001F, MAM1000W or equivalent
CSC3002F	COMPUTER SCIENCE 3002	2 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
CSC3003S	COMPUTER SCIENCE 3003	2 M to F	See departmental entry	As for CSC3002F
CSC3020H	THREE DIMENSIONAL & DISTRIBUTED GAMES DESIGN	3 M to F	4 hours per week, by arrangement	CSC2001F, CSC2002S and CSC2003S
EGS1003S	GEOGRAPHY, DEVELOPMENT & ENVIRONMENT	2 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
EGS1004S	INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
EGS2013F	THE PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT	5 M to F	One practical per week, Friday, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
EGS2014S	CONTEMPORARY URBAN CHALLENGES	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
EGS3012S	SYNOPTIC CLIMATOLOGY	1 M to F	One practical per week, Tuesday or Wednesday, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
EGS3016F	POPULATION DYNAMICS, MEASUREMENT & PROCESSES I	4 Tu to F	One tutorial per week, Friday, 6th and 7th period	See departmental entry
EGS3017S	POPULATION DYNAMICS, MEASUREMENT & PROCESSES II	4 Tu to F	One tutorial per week, Friday, 6th and 7th period	EGS3016F
EGS3018F	INTRODUCTION TO POPULATION STUDIES	3 M to Th	One tutorial per week, Friday, 3rd period	EGS2014S (or EGS2011S) or SOC2019F
EGS3019S	POPULATION & DEVELOPMENT	3 M to Th	One tutorial per week, Friday, 3rd period	EGS3018F and EGS2014S (or EGS2011S) or SOC2019F
EGS3020F	ENVIRONMENTAL	5 M to F	One practical per	See departmental entry

144 SCHEDULE OF COURSES

	CHANGE & CHALLENGE		week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00	
EGS3021F	SUSTAINABILITY & ENVIRONMENT	3 M to F	One practical per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
EGS3022S	GEOGRAPHIC THOUGHT	4 M to F	One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
GEO1006S	INTRODUCTION TO MINERALS, ROCKS & STRUCTURE	5 M to F	One practical per week, Thursday, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
GEO1007S	EARTH STEWARDSHIP	5 M to F	By arrangements on the website	None
GEO1009F	INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES	2 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
GEO2001F	MINERALOGY & CRYSTALLOGRAPHY	2 M to F	One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
GEO2004S	PHYSICAL GEOLOGY	2 M to F	One practical per week, Wednesday, 14h00-17h00	GEO2001F
GEO2005X	FIELD GEOLOGY & GEOLOGICAL MAPPING (second-year half course)	None	See departmental entry	GEO1006S, GEO2004S (co-requisite)
GEO3001S	STRATIGRAPHY & ECONOMIC GEOLOGY	2 M to F	Two practicals per week, Tuesday and Thursday, 14h00-17h00	GEO2004S, DP in GEO3005F
GEO3005F	PETROLOGY & STRUCTURAL GEOLOGY	2 M to F	Two practicals per week, Tuesday and Thursday, 14h00-17h00	GEO2001F, GEO2004S, first qualifying course in Chemistry
HUB2019F	INTRODUCTION TO HUMAN BIOLOGY	1 M to F	M or Tu	CEM1000W (or equivalent), BIO1000F
HUB2021S	HUMAN BIOLOGY : MAINTENANCE & INTEGRATION	1 M to F	See departmental entry	HUB2019F, CEM1000W or equivalent
HUB3006F	GENERAL & APPLIED PHYSIOLOGY	1 M to F	See departmental entry	HUB2021S, CEM1000W (or equivalent)
HUB3007S	BIOPHYSICS & NEUROPHYSIOLOGY	1 M to F	See departmental entry	HUB2021S, CEM1000W (or equivalent)
MAM1000W	MATHEMATICS I	See departmental entry	One 2-hour tutorial per week	See departmental entry
MAM1004F	MATHEMATICS 1004	1 M to F	One per week, M or W afternoon, 14h00-16h00	See departmental entry
MAM1004H	MATHEMATICS 1004	Three lectures per week, days to be arranged, in Meridian	By arrangement	See departmental entry
MAM1005H	MATHEMATICS 1005	1 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
MAM1006H	MATHEMATICS 1006	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	See departmental entry

SCHEDULE OF COURSES 145

MAM1043H	MODELLING & APPLIED COMPUTING	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
MAM1044H	DYNAMICS	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
MAM2000W	MATHEMATICS II	5 M to F with options in 4th	See departmental entry	MAM1000W or equivalent
MAM2001H, MAM2004H and MAM2002S	MATHEMATICS 2001, 2004 & 2002	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
MAM2043S	INTRODUCTION TO BIOLOGICAL MODELLING	5 M to F	See departmental entry	MAM1004F or MAM1004H or MAM1005H
MAM2046W	APPLIED MATHEMATICS II	3 M to F	One tutorial per week, Thursday, 14h00-16h00	See departmental entry
MAM2047H	APPLIED MATHEMATICS 2047	Depending on modules chosen, as for MAM2046W	One tutorial per week, Thursday, 14h00-16h00	MAM1043H, MAM1044H and MAM1000W
MAM2048H	APPLIED MATHEMATICS 2048	Depending on modules chosen, as for MAM2046W	One tutorial per week, Thursday, 14h00-16h00	MAM2047H
MAM2052F	QUANTITATIVE SKILLS FOR SCIENTISTS	4 M to F	Friday 3rd or Thursday 5th period	MAM1004F or MAM1004H or MAM1005H or MAM1000W
MAM3000W	MATHEMATICS III	5 M to F with options in 4th	See departmental entry	MAM2000W
MAM3001W	MATHEMATICS 3001	5 M to F with options in 4th	See departmental entry	MAM2000W
MAM3002H and MAM3003S	MATHEMATICS 3002 & MATHEMATICS 3003	5 M to Th with options in 4th	See departmental entry	MAM2000W
MAM3040W	APPLIED MATHEMATICS III	3 M to F	One tutorial per week, Thursday, 6th and 7th periods	See departmental entry
MAM3041H	APPLIED MATHEMATICS III (half course)	See departmental entry	One tutorial per week, Thursday, 6th and 7th periods	See departmental entry
MAM3042H	FURTHER BIOLOGICAL MODELLING	Average of two and a half per week, to be arranged	One every two to three weeks, to be arranged	MAM2043S
MAM3048H	APPLIED MATHEMATICS 3048	Depending on modules chosen, as for MAM3040W	One tutorial per week, Thursday, 6th and 7th period	MAM3041H
MCB2014F	MOLECULAR COMPONENTS OF CELLS	4 M to F	See departmental entry	CEM1000W or equivalent
MCB2015S	METABOLISM	4 M to F	See departmental entry	MCB2014F
MCB2016F	INTRODUCTION TO MICROBIOLOGY	5 M to F	See departmental entry	CEM1000W or equivalent, BIO1000F
MCB2017S	MICROBIAL BIOTECHNOLOGY	5 M to F	See departmental entry	MCB2016F
MCB2018F	INTRODUCTION TO GENETICS	3 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
MCB2019S	EUKARYOTIC GENE	3 M to F	See departmental	MCB2014F, MCB2018F

146 SCHEDULE OF COURSES

	REGULATION & CELL SIGNALLING		entry	
MCB3019F	RECOMBINANT DNA, GENOMICS & PROTEOMICS	3 M to F	M or Tu 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
MCB3020F	PROTEIN STRUCTURE & FUNCTION	4 M to F	Th or F 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
MCB3021F	MOLECULAR MICROBIAL GENETICS	5 M to F	W 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
MCB3022S	ADVANCED BIOTECHNOLOGY	2 M to F	W 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
MCB3023S	MOLECULAR EVOLUTIONARY GENETICS & DEVELOPMENT	3 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
MCB3024S	DEFENCE & DISEASE	5 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
PHY1004W	MATTER & INTERACTIONS	3 M to F	One practical or tutorial per week, Tuesday 14h00 to 17h00	See departmental entry
PHY1023H	PRINCIPLES OF PHYSICS A	3 M to F	One practical or tutorial per week, Tuesday, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
PHY1024F	PRINCIPLES OF PHYSICS B	3 M to F	One practical or tutorial per week, W, 14h00 to 17h00	See departmental entry
PHY1031F	GENERAL PHYSICS A	3 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
PHY1032S	GENERAL PHYSICS B	3 M to F	See departmental entry	At least 40% in PHY1031F or PHY1023H
PHY2009S	INTERMEDIATE PHYSICS	5 M to F	W 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
PHY2014F	WAVES & ELECTROMAGNETISM	4 M to F	M 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
PHY2015S	CLASSICAL & QUANTUM MECHANICS	4 M to F	M 14h00-17h00	As for PHY2014F
PHY3021F	ADVANCED PHYSICS A	4 M to F	Two sessions per week, M and Th, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
PHY3022S	ADVANCED PHYSICS B	4 M to F	Two sessions per week, M and Th, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
SAN1015F	WORDS, DEEDS, BONES & THINGS	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	None
SEA2002S	COASTAL OCEANOGRAPHY	1 M to F	See departmental entry	SEA2003F
SEA2003F	INTRODUCTORY PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY & MARINE DISASTERS	1 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
SEA3002F	OCEAN CIRCULATION	1 M to F	One per week, M, 14h00-17h00	See departmental entry
STA1000F AND STA1000S	STATISTICS 1000	See departmental entry	By arrangement	See departmental entry
STA1006S	STATISTICS FOR MATHEMATICAL	See departmental entry	One tutorial per week and	See departmental entry

	DISCIPLINES		workshops to be arranged	
STA1007S	BIONUMERACY	1 M to F	See departmental entry	See departmental entry
STA2004F	STATISTICS 2004	See departmental entry	See departmental entry	MAM1000W and one of the following: STA1006S or STA1006H
STA2005S	STATISTICS 2005	1 M to F	See departmental entry	DP for STA2004F
STA2020F	BUSINESS STATISTICS	See departmental entry	Tutorials/Workshops by arrangement	See departmental entry
STA3041F	STATISTICS 3041	1 M to F	M and W, 6th and 7th period	See departmental entry
STA3043S	STATISTICS 3043	1 M to F	M and W, 6th and 7th period	See departmental entry
STA3045F	MARKOV PROCESSES & ADVANCED TIME SERIES	Five per week, refer department	One tutorial per week, refer department	See departmental entry

INDEX

Actuarial Science, BSc(Hons) in	127
Actuarial Science specialisation field in Mathematical, Physical and Statistical Science Degree Programme	14
Admission to BSc degree, Minimum requirements for	6
Admission to the BSc (Hons) degree	21
Admission to the MSc degree	22
Admission, Transfer from other faculties	11
Analytical Chemistry, MSc in	49
Applied Marine Science, MSc in	111
Archaeology	27
Astronomy	33
Astrophysics, BSc(Hons) in	35
Atmospheric Science, BSc (Hons) in	65
Botany	37
BSc (Hons), Rules for the degree of	21
BSc (Hons), Subjects for the degree of	22
BSc, Rules for the degree of	8
Chemistry	43
Class medals	13
Computer Science	50
Conservation Biology, MSc in	138
Convenors for Degree Programmes	3
Course codes, Explanatory note on	7
Curriculum for the BSc degree programmes, SB006, SB012, SB013 and SB014	14
Curriculum for the General Entry for Programmes in Science, SB011	21
Dean's Merit List	13
Degree Programmes offered in the Faculty of Science	14
Degrees offered in the Faculty	7
Distinction, Award of	11
Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty	5
DSc, Rules for the degree of	25
Electron Microscope Unit	140
Environmental and Geographical Science	58
Environmental Evaluation Unit	58
Environmental Management, MPhil in	67
Examinations, Supplementary	9
Faculty Student Council (SSC)	4
Fellows in the Faculty	4
Geochemistry, BSc (Hons) in	74
Geology	69
Geomatics Division (Faculty of Engineering and the Built Environment)	75
Human Biology	80
Industrial Mathematics, BSc (Hons) in	99
Mathematical Statistics, MSc in	128
Mathematics and Applied Mathematics	84
Mathematics of Computer Science, BSc (Hons) in	99
Mathematics of Finance, MSc in	100
Molecular and Cell Biology	101
MSc, Dissertation for the degree of	24
MSc, Subjects for the degree of	23
Ocean and Atmosphere Science, MSc in	111

Oceanography	109
Operational Research in Development, MSc in	129
Operational Research, MSc in	128
PhD, Rules for the degree of	25
Physical Oceanography, BSc(Hons), MSc or PhD in	111
Physics	113
Postgraduate Centre, The.....	4
Prizes	5
Programme Convenors in the Faculty	3
Readmission to the Faculty, Refusal of	10
Rules for the BSc degree	8
Rules for the BSc (Hons) degree	21
Rules for the DSc degree	25
Rules for the PhD degree	25
Scholarships	6
Statistical Sciences, BSc(Hons) in	127
Statistical Sciences, MSc in	128
Statistics	122
Student Advisers in the Faculty	3
Student Council, Faculty, (SSC)	4
Supplementary examinations	9
Theoretical Physics, BSc (Hons) or MSc in	121
Theoretical Physics, BSc (Hons) or MSc in	121
Transfer from other faculties	11
UCT Book Award	5
Zoology	130